

**O‘ZBEKISTON RESPUBLIKASI**  
**OLIY VA O‘RTA MAXSUS TA’LIM VAZIRLIGI**  
**NAVOIY DAVLAT KONCHILIK INSTITUTI**  
**G.H. NURMATOVA**

**U**zbekistan-motherland,  
**U**nited **K**ingdom,  
**U**nited **S**tates,  
and other English speaking countries

**INGLIZ TILI**

*O‘quv qo‘llanma*

*(310000 – Muhandislik ishi, 320000 – Ishlab chiqarich texnologiyalari)*

**Navoiy-2019**

Ushbu o‘quv qo‘llanma Navoiy davlat konchilik institutining 2017-yil 29-aprel oyidagi institut Kengashida N8/6g-sonli kengash qarori bilan tasdiqlangan.

Nurmatova G.Kh./ “Uzbekistan - motherland, United Kingdom, United States and other English speaking countries” bo‘yicha o‘quv qo‘llanma/ Navoiy davlat konchilik instituti

“Uzbekistan-motherland, United Kingdom, United States and other English speaking countries” o‘quv qo‘llanmasi O‘zbekiston, Birlashgan Qirollik, Amerika Qo‘shma Shtatlari davlatlarining umumiy ta’rifi, geografik joylashuvi, shaharlari, qisqacha tarixi, buyuk siymolari, xalqi va madaniyati, ta’lim va sport kabi ma’lumotlar, matn va matnga oid mashqlar shaklida jamlangan bo‘lib, Kanada, Avstraliya va Yangi Zelandiya mamlakatlari to‘g‘risida mustaqil o‘zlashtirish uchun umumiy ma’lumotlar berilgan. Shuningdek, har bir tematik bo‘limdan so‘ng afsonalar, hikoyalar va qiziqarli ma’lumotlar berilgan.

Mazkur o‘quv qo‘llanma oliy o‘quv yurtlarining bakalavr, magistr hamda katta ilmiy xodim va mustaqil izlanuvchilari hamda ingliz tilini mustaqil o‘rganuvchilar uchun qo‘shimcha darslar ishlanmasi bo‘ib, ingliz tilida o‘qish, gapirish va yozish ko‘nikmalarini rivojlantirishga mo‘ljallangan.

Qo‘llanmadan o‘rganish va ma’lumotlar manbasi sifatida o‘lkamizga tashrif buyurayotgan xorijiy mehmonlar hamda ingliz tilida so‘zlashuvchi davlatlarning biriga sayohat qilmoqchi bo‘lgan kishilar, ushbu davlatlar to‘g‘risida ma’lumotga ega bo‘lish maqsadida ham foydalanishi mumkin.

Tuzuvchi: dots. G.H. Nurmatova

Taqrizchilar: **D.M. Teshabayeva**, O‘zDJTU professori,  
filologiya fanlari doktori  
**O.S. Xayitova**, NDKI dotsenti,  
tarix fanlari nomzodi

© -----

## MUNDARIJA:

<b>I QISM</b>	<i>So‘z boshi</i>	12
<b>O‘ZBEKISTON</b>	<b><i>O‘zbekiston</i></b>	14
	<i>Geografik joylashuvi va tabiati</i>	15
	<i>O‘zbekiston tarixiga nazar</i>	17
	<i>Milliy bayroq va milliy gerb</i>	20
	<i>O‘zbekiston iqtisodi</i>	23
	<b><i>O‘zbekiston shaharlari</i></b>	29
	<i>Toshkent</i>	29
	<i>Samarqand</i>	32
	<i>Buxoro</i>	37
	<i>Navoiy</i>	40
	<b><i>Madaniyat, meros va xalq</i></b>	45
	<i>O‘zbek xalqining an‘ana va urf-odatları</i>	46
	<i>O‘zbek xalqining tabiati</i>	49
	<i>O‘zbek milliy taomları</i>	52
	<i>An‘anaviy hunarmandchilik</i>	61
	<b><i>Mashhur O‘zbek allomalari</i></b>	68
	<i>Alisher Navoiy</i>	68
	<i>Abdulla Qodiriy</i>	70
	<i>Ulug‘bek</i>	72
	<i>Bobur</i>	73
	<b><i>Fan, ta‘lim va sport</i></b>	79
	<i>O‘zbekistonda fanning rivojlanishi</i>	79
	<i>O‘zbekiston ta‘limi</i>	81
	<i>O‘zbekiston milliy universiteti</i>	85
	<i>Navoiy davlat konchilik instituti</i>	86
	<i>O‘zbekiston sporti</i>	90

<b>II QISM</b> <b>BIRLASHGAN</b> <b>QIROLLIK</b>	<b><i>Birlashgan Qirollik</i></b>	96
	<i>Geografik joylashuvi va tabiati</i>	97
	<i>Birlashgan Qirollik tarixiga nazar</i>	100
	<i>Britaniya milliy bayroqlari va milliy gerblari</i>	106
	<i>Britaniya iqtisodi</i>	111
	<b><i>Birlashgan qirollik davlatlari va poytaxtlari</i></b>	117
	<i>Angliya</i>	117
	<i>Shotlandiya</i>	124
	<i>Uels</i>	131
	<i>Shimoliy Irlandiya</i>	134
	<b><i>Britaniyaning madaniyati, merosi va xalqi</i></b>	140
	<i>An'analar va urf-odatlar</i>	141
	<i>Ingliz xalqining tabiati</i>	145
	<i>Britaniya milliy taomlari</i>	148
	<b><i>Britaniyaning buyuk siymolari</i></b>	153
	<i>Uilyam Shekspir</i>	153
	<i>J.K. Rouling</i>	155
	<i>Isaak Nyuton</i>	156
	<i>Aleksandr Graxam Bell</i>	158
	<b><i>Fan, ta'lim va sport</i></b>	163
	<i>Britaniyada fanning rivojlanishi</i>	163
	<i>Britaniya ta'limi</i>	168
	<i>Oksford universiteti</i>	172
<i>Kembrij universiteti</i>	176	
<i>Britaniyada sport</i>	181	
<b>III QISM</b>	<b>AQSh</b>	191
<b>AMERIKA</b>	<i>Amerikaning ochilishi</i>	191
<b>QO'SHMA</b>	<i>Geografik joylashuvi va tabiati</i>	198
<b>SHTATLARI</b>	<i>AQShning qisqacha tarixi</i>	201

	<i>Milliy bayroq va milliy gerb</i>	205
	<i>AQSh iqtisodi</i>	209
	<i><b>AQSH shaharlari</b></i>	214
	<i>Vashington</i>	214
	<i>Nyu York</i>	217
	<i>Los Anjeles</i>	221
	<i><b>Amerika madaniyati, merosi va xalqi</b></i>	226
	<i>Amerikaliklar va ularning madaniyati</i>	227
	<i>Amerika milliy taomlari</i>	231
	<i>An'analar va urf-odatlar</i>	234
	<i><b>Amerikaning buyuk shaxslari</b></i>	240
	<i>Mark Tven</i>	240
	<i>Bill Geys</i>	241
	<i><b>Fan, ta'lim va sport</b></i>	246
	<i>AQShda fanning rivojlanishi</i>	246
	<i>AQSh ta'limi</i>	250
	<i>Garvard universiteti</i>	254
	<i>Massachuset texnologiya instituti</i>	255
	<i>AQSh sporti</i>	259
<b>IV QISM</b>	<i>Kanada</i>	265
<b>INGLIZ TILIDA</b>	<i>Avstraliya</i>	268
<b>SO'ZLASHUVCHI</b>	<i>Yangi Zelandiya</i>	271
<b>BOSHQA</b>		
<b>DAVLATLAR</b>		
	<i>Mustaqil o'rganish ko'nikmalarini rivojlantiruvchi topshiriqlar</i>	274
	<i>Nutq kommunikatsiyasining zamonaviy pedagogik texnologiyalari, metodlari va shakllari bilan bog'liq asosiy tushunchalari glossariysi</i>	275
	<i>Foydalanilgan adabiyotlar</i>	280

## CONTENTS:

<b>PART I</b> <b>UZBEKISTAN</b>	<i>Preface</i>	12
	<b><i>Uzbekistan</i></b>	14
	<i>Geographical location and nature of Uzbekistan</i>	15
	<i>A brief history of Uzbekistan</i>	17
	<i>National Flag and National Emblem of Uzbekistan</i>	20
	<i>Economy of Uzbekistan</i>	23
	<b><i>Cities of Uzbekistan</i></b>	29
	<i>Tashkent</i>	29
	<i>Samarkand</i>	32
	<i>Bukhara</i>	37
	<i>Navoi</i>	40
	<b><i>The Culture, the heritage and the people</i></b>	45
	<i>Customs and traditions of Uzbek people</i>	46
	<i>The Nature of Uzbek people</i>	49
	<i>The Uzbek National Cuisine</i>	52
	<i>The Traditional Uzbek crafts</i>	61
	<b><i>Famous Uzbek people</i></b>	68
	<i>Alisher Navoiy</i>	68
	<i>Abdulla Kodiriy</i>	70
	<i>Ulugbek</i>	72
	<i>Babur</i>	73
	<b><i>Science, education and sport</i></b>	79
	<i>Science in Uzbekistan</i>	79
<i>Education of Uzbekistan</i>	81	
<i>National University of Uzbekistan</i>	85	
<i>Navoi State Mining Institute</i>	86	
<i>Sport in Uzbekistan</i>	90	
<b>PART II</b> <b>UNITED</b> <b>KINGDOM</b>	<b><i>The UK</i></b>	96
	<i>Geographical location and nature of UK</i>	97
	<i>A Brief history of the United Kingdom</i>	100

	<i>National Flags and National Emblems of the UK</i>	106	
	<i>Economy of the UK</i>	111	
	<b><i>Countries and capitals of UK</i></b>	117	
	<i>England</i>	117	
	<i>Scotland</i>	124	
	<i>Wales</i>	131	
	<i>Northern Ireland</i>	134	
	<b><i>The Culture, the heritage and the people</i></b>	140	
	<i>British traditional holidays</i>	141	
	<i>English people as they are</i>	145	
	<i>English national Cuisine</i>	148	
	<b><i>Famous British people</i></b>	153	
	<i>William Shakespeare</i>	153	
	<i>J.K. Rowling</i>	155	
	<i>Isaac Newton</i>	156	
	<i>Alexander Graham Bell</i>	158	
	<b><i>Science, education and sport</i></b>	163	
	<i>Science in the UK</i>	163	
	<i>Education of the UK</i>	168	
	<i>The University of Oxford</i>	172	
	<i>The University of Cambridge</i>	176	
	<i>Sport in UK</i>	181	
	<b>PART III THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA</b>	<b><i>The USA</i></b>	191
		<i>The Discovery of America</i>	191
		<i>Geographical location and nature</i>	198
		<i>A Brief history of the United States</i>	201
		<i>National Flag and National Emblem of the USA</i>	205
<i>Economy of the USA</i>		209	
<b><i>Cities of the USA</i></b>		214	
<i>Washington</i>		214	
<i>New York</i>		217	
<i>Los Angeles</i>		221	

	<b><i>The Culture, the heritage and the people</i></b>	226
	<i>Americans and American culture</i>	227
	<i>American national Cuisine</i>	231
	<i>Customs and Traditions</i>	234
	<b><i>Famous American people</i></b>	240
	<i>Mark Twain</i>	240
	<i>Bill Gates</i>	241
	<b><i>Science, education and sport</i></b>	246
	<i>Science in the USA</i>	246
	<i>Education system of the USA</i>	250
	<i>Harvard university</i>	254
	<i>Massachusetts Institute of Technology</i>	255
	<i>Sport in the USA</i>	259
<b><i>PART IV</i></b>	<i>Canada</i>	265
<b><i>OTHER</i></b>	<i>Australia</i>	268
<b><i>ENGLISH</i></b>	<i>New Zealand</i>	271
<b><i>SPEAKING</i></b>		
<b><i>COUNTRIES</i></b>		
	<i>Tasks for Developing Self-Learning Skills</i>	274
	<i>Index Glossary for basic Concepts Related with Modern Pedagogical Technologies, Methods and Forms of Communications</i>	275
	<i>References</i>	280

## SO‘ZBOSHI

*Uzbekistan-motherland, United Kingdom, United States and other English speaking countries*” o‘quv qo‘llanmasining nomi muqovada davlatlarning bosh harflaridan olinib *UzUKUs* qisqartma shaklida keltiriladi. Qo‘llanmaning to‘liq nomi titul qismida, O‘zbekiston – ona Vatan, Birlashgan Qirollik, Amerika Qo‘shma Shtatlari va ingliz tilida so‘zlashuvchi boshqa davlatlar sifatida berilgan.

Mazkur o‘quv qo‘llanma oliy o‘quv yurtlarining bakalavr, magistr hamda katta ilmiy xodim va mustaqil izlanuvchilar hamda ingliz tilini mustaqil o‘rganuvchilar uchun qo‘shimcha darslar ishlanmasi bo‘lib, ingliz tilida o‘qish, gapirish va yozish ko‘nikmalarini rivojlantirishga mo‘ljallangan.

O‘quv qo‘llanma bilim berish bilan birga, o‘rganuvchida tarbiyaviy, ma’rifiy va ma’naviy jihatlarni ham shakllantiradi. Qo‘llanmada Vatanimiz va ingliz tilida so‘zlashuvchi mamlakatlar to‘g‘risida ma’lumotlar ingliz tilida, ularga doir gapirish, fikr yuritish va fikr almashishda so‘z boyligini oshiruvchi matnlar va mashqlar berilib, ezgu qadriyat va an’analarni chuqur anglashda, xususan, xalqimiz, ayniqsa yosh avlodning ma’naviy-intellektual salohiyati, ongu tafakkuri va dunyoqarashini yuksaltirishda, ona Vatani va xalqiga muhabbat va sadoqat tuyg‘usi bilan yashaydigan barkamol shaxsni tarbiyalashda, shuningdek, ingliz tilida so‘zlashuvchi mamlakatlar haqida ma’lumotga ega bo‘lishda va ularning tarixi va qadriyatlarini o‘rganishda katta ahamiyatga egadir.

Davlatimiz rahbari Sh.M.Mirziyoyevning ma’naviy-ma’rifiy masalalarga doir har bir chiqishlarida ajdodlar merosini qadrlash, ularning tafakkur mahsulidan unumli foydalanish, kitob mutolaasiga alohida e’tibor qaratish ta’kidlanadi, o‘tmish an’analari, axloqiy-ma’rifiy qarashlar bugunni yorituvchi mas’al sifatida e’tirof etiladi.

“Yoshlarimizning mustaqil fikrlaydigan, yuksak intellektual va ma’naviy salohiyatga ega bo‘lib, dunyo miqyosida o‘z tengdoshlariga hech qaysi sohada

bo'sh kelmaydigan insonlar bo'lib kamol topishi, baxtli bo'lishi uchun davlatimiz va jamiyatimizning bor kuch-imkoniyatlarini safarbar etamiz"<sup>1</sup>- degan so'zlari biz uchun dasturulamal vazifasini o'tamoqda.

Shundan kelib chiqib, davlatimiz rahbari tomonidan turizmni rivojlantirishga oid islohotlar olib borilayotgan bir paytda ushbu qo'llanmadan o'rganish va ma'lumotlar manbasi sifatida o'lkamizga tashrif buyurayotgan xorijiy mehmonlar hamda ingliz tilida so'zlashuvchi davlatlarning biriga sayohat qilmoqchi bo'lganlar uchun, ushbu davlatlar to'g'risida ma'lumotga ega bo'lish maqsadida ham foydalanilishi mumkin. Bu esa, o'z navbatida, qo'llanmaning boshqa – turizm, o'lkashunoslik kabi sohalar bilan bog'liqligini, boshqa qo'llanmalardan farqlanishini hamda qo'llanmaning ulg'ayib kelayotgan yosh avlod va o'rganuvchilar uchun muhim ahamiyat kasb etishini belgilaydi.

Ushbu qo'llanma 4ta qismdan (parts) iborat bo'lib, birinchi qismda O'zbekiston, ikkinchisida Buyuk Britaniya, uchinchisida Amerika Qo'shma Shtatlari davlatlarining umumiy ta'rifi, geografik joylashuvi, shaharlari, qisqacha tarixi, buyuk siymolari, xalqi va madaniyati, ta'lim va sport kabi ma'lumotlar, matn va matnga oid mashqlar shaklida jamlangan bo'lib, to'rtinchi qismda Kanada, Avstraliya va Yangi Zelandiya mamlakatlari to'g'risida mustaqil o'zlashtirish uchun umumiy ma'lumotlar berilgan. Shuningdek, har bir matndan so'ng ingliz tilidagi tayanch so'z va iboralarning tarjimasi o'zbek va rus tillarida va har bir tematik bo'limdan so'ng afsonalar, hikoyalar va qiziqarli ma'lumotlar berilgan. Nutq kommunikatsiyasining zamonaviy pedagogik texnologiyalari, metodlari va shakllari bilan bog'liq asosiy tushunchalari glossariysi ham darslik so'ngida uch tilda keltirilgan.

O'quv qo'llanmani tayyorlashda muallif ham milliy ham xalqaro tajribalarga tayangan: Bosh ilmiy-metodik markaz tomonidan tashkil qilingan malaka oshirish kurslaridan o'rganilgan ilg'or pedagogik texnologiyalar,

---

<sup>1</sup> Mirziyoyev Sh.M. Erkin va farovon demokratik O'zbekiston davlatini birgalikda barpo etamiz. – Toshkent: O'zbekiston, 2016. 14-bet.

O‘zbekiston Respublikasi oliy va o‘rta maxsus ta’lim Vazirligi va Britaniya Kengashi tomonidan tasdiqlangan “DUET - Professional Development for Uzbekistan English Language Teachers” (O‘zbekiston ingliz tili o‘qituvchilari uchun professional rivojlanish) dasturi ko‘rsatmalariga hamda AQSH elchixonasi va O‘zbekiston davlat jahon tillari universiteti qoshidagi UzRIAIM markazi bilan hamkorlikda “Material Design: Authorship Development Project” (Darsliklar yaratish: mualliflar guruhini tayyorlash) loyihasida o‘rganilgan bilim, tajriba va ko‘rsatmalaridan foydalanilgan.

**dots. G.H. Nurmatova**

## PREFACE

The title of the textbook cover is designed as *UzUkUs* representing the initial letters of Uzbekistan, the United Kingdom and the United States. The full name of the textbook is introduced on the next title page of the textbook as “Uzbekistan-motherland, United Kingdom, United States and other English speaking countries”.

This textbook has been developed for bachelor, master, and postgraduate students and for self-learners as an additional learning source with the aim to improve reading, speaking and writing skills of the English language.

The textbook assists learners not only in gaining knowledge, but also in developing educational, informational and spiritual qualities. The textbook gives texts and tasks about our Motherland and English speaking countries that enable to enrich learners’ vocabulary and improve speaking, reading and writing skills. In order to bring up matured citizens with the feeling of devotion, love and respect for their Motherland, in this textbook, the learners, particularly the young growing Uzbek generation, are expected to be educated the value of customs and traditions, the intellectual and spiritual potential of their people. Additionally, this textbook pursues to develop thinking and widen outlook of the learners by informing about English speaking countries developing their awareness and feeling of respect towards those countries’ history, customs, and traditions.

At every speech related with educational and spiritual issues, our president Sh.M.Mirziyoy emphasizes the essence of our ancestors’ heritage and the productive use of their treasure of knowledge as well as development of critical thinking skills for their books interpretation and analyses with the aim to preserve and follow their knowledgeable heritage as a torch for upbringing and educating the young generation.

The president’s words as “Our state and our society put all strength and efforts to educate the youth of Uzbekistan to be competitive with their peers

of other countries in any sphere and to be successful and progressive in their life” demands great responsibility from us.<sup>2</sup>

Currently, our president has been carrying out a number of reforms on development of tourism; this textbook is the right informative source for foreign guests visiting our country as well as for our people who intend to visit an English speaking country. This feature of the textbook relates it with other fields such as country study or tourism as well as distinguishes it from other textbooks that encourage young specialists and growing generation to understand the importance of national values.

This textbook consists of four parts: the three parts provide general information, geographical location, cities, brief history, famous people, nation and culture, education and sport of Uzbekistan, United Kingdom, United States whereas the fourth part contains a brief glance at Canada, Australia and New Zealand. A learner can also enjoy reading legends, stories and interesting facts at the end of each sub-topic. In addition, after each text, the list of active vocabulary of words and word combinations as well as index glossary for basic concepts related with modern pedagogical technologies, methods and forms of communications are given with Uzbek and Russian translation.

To develop this textbook the author has referred to national and international experience, knowledge, skills and experience on using of advanced pedagogical technologies obtained from Head Scientific Methodical Center, DUET (Professional Development of Uzbekistan English language Teachers) organized by the Ministry of Higher and Secondary-specialized Education of Uzbekistan and British Council, “Material Design: Authorship Development Project” supported by UzSPIC at the Uzbek World Languages University and the US Embassy specialists.

**Assoc. prof.G.H. Nurmatova**

---

<sup>2</sup> Mirziyoyev Sh.M. Erkin va farovon demokratik O‘zbekiston davlatini birgalikda barpo etamiz. – Toshkent: O‘zbekiston, 2016. P. 14-t.

## PART I

# Uzbekistan

### *Legend about Uzbekistan*



*By the ancient legend, the Lord allotted lands of the created world to all nations. Being kind and friendly, Uzbek made the way for everyone in the crowd: "Please, pass. Markhamat."*

*When, finally, it was his turn, the Lord said to him: "My son, you came too late. I have already finished the allotment of lands. Where were you before?" Uzbek bowed to the Heavenly Father and, laying his hand on his chest, said, "Oh, our Creator! You taught me to be always merciful and to love neighbors. And I, the servant of God, gave the way to everyone who wished to go forward and therefore I am the last who appeared before your eyes".*

*Face of God brightened up and pure smile lit up his face. He said: "My son, Uzbek! You turned out a truly generous person with pure soul. And now I am going to give you land that I left for myself and which is like a paradise."*

*Therefore, the Creator of Heaven and Earth gave Uzbek the land, which was between two large rivers, flowing from the mountains. The name of this land is Uzbekistan.*

<https://www.advantour.com/uzbekistan/legends/uzbekistan.htm>

### Fact file: Uzbekistan

<b>Formal name:</b>	<b>The Republic of Uzbekistan</b>
<b>Capital:</b>	<b>Tashkent.</b>
	<b>Population: 2.2 million</b>
<b>Government:</b>	<b>Republic</b>
	<b>Declared independence in 1991.</b>
<b>President:</b>	<b>Shavkat Mirziyoev.</b>
<b>Area:</b>	<b>448,900 sq. km</b>
<b>Population:</b>	<b>31,5 million</b>
<b>State Language:</b>	<b>Uzbek</b>
<b>Currency:</b>	<b>Uzbek Sum (UZS)</b>

## Geographical location and nature of Uzbekistan

Uzbekistan - beautiful land at the crossroads of the Silk Road, an independent state located in the heart of Central Asia, between two rivers - the Amu Darya and Syr Darya. The territory of Uzbekistan is 448900 sq. km. It is the 56th-largest country (after Sweden). The country stretches 1425 km from the west to east and 930 km from north to south. Uzbekistan is not only one of the larger Central Asian states but also the only Central Asian state to border all of the other four - Kyrgyzstan, Turkmenistan, Kazakhstan, Tajikistan and Afghanistan. The total length of its borders is 6221 km.

Uzbekistan's natural world is very diverse. It is composed of burning desert areas and showy mountains, rivers and completely dry lands. In the north-west of the country is the Turan lowlands and mountains of Tien Shan, and the south-east - the mountain ranges of the Pamir-Alai. Kyzyl Kum desert in the north.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

allot ( <i>v</i> )	Ulashmoq	распределять
allotment ( <i>n</i> )	Taqsimlanish	рапределение
brighten up ( <i>v</i> )	Yorishmoq	сиять, засиять
bow ( <i>v</i> )	ta'zim qilmoq	поклоняться
burning ( <i>adj</i> )	alangali	жгучий
chest ( <i>n</i> )	ko'krak, ko'ks	грудь (зд. поклониться прижав руки к груди)
compose ( <i>v</i> )	yozmoq, ijod etmoq, iborat bo'lmoq	составлять

crossroad ( <i>n</i> )	chorraha	перекрёсток
diverse ( <i>adj</i> )	turli, har xil	разнообразный
flow ( <i>n, v</i> )	oqmoq	поток, течь
lowlands ( <i>n</i> )	pasttekisliklar	равнины
to stretch ( <i>v</i> )	cho‘zmoq, uzaytirmoq	растилаться
turn ( <i>n, v</i> )	aylanmoq, burilish	очередь, повернуться
turn out ( <i>v</i> )	o‘girilmoq	повернуться

### **SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:**

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 Who do you understand under the title of “Lord”?
- 2 Why did all nations come to the Lord?
- 3 Why did Uzbek give the way to everyone?
- 4 Did the Lord get angry with Uzbek? Why?
- 5 Why did the Lord decide to give his own land to Uzbek?
- 6 What is the moral of this legend?
- 7 Are the Uzbek people really merciful and peace loving people?
- 8 Can Uzbekistan’s geographical locations be described as a paradise? Why?
- 9 How else would you describe your motherland?
- 10 Would you choose another place for living or would you live on this land for all your life?

➤ Fill in the suitable word from the box

<i>crowd</i>	<i>lowlands</i>	<i>turn</i>	<i>appeared</i>	<i>go forward</i>
<i>allotted</i>	<i>Servant</i>	<i>Left</i>	<i>paradise</i>	<i>Bowed</i>

1. The manager \_\_\_\_\_ share of company employees.
2. There was a big \_\_\_\_\_ in the street. Everybody was running somewhere.
3. When his \_\_\_\_\_ came to answer the teacher's questions, he just kept silent.
4. In ancient times ordinary people \_\_\_\_\_ to people of higher class or status.
5. She is so rich that can afford a \_\_\_\_\_ to do all housework.
6. Everybody were waiting for her and at last she \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I'm sorry, can I \_\_\_\_\_, I can't see what is written there. I have a poor eyesight.
8. Hell or \_\_\_\_\_. Only the God knows who deserves what.
9. Sorry, I \_\_\_\_\_ your book at home. I'll bring it tomorrow.
10. In the north-west of Uzbekistan is the Turan \_\_\_\_\_ and mountains of Tien Shan.

## A brief history of Uzbekistan



History of the Uzbek people is closely intertwined with the history of other Turkic peoples of Central Asia and beyond present-day Uzbekistan.

The appearance of the first states in Uzbekistan refers to IV centuries BC, with the establishment of such states as Khorezm and Bactria. In 329-327 BC. e. Alexander the Great conquered Sogdiana and Bactria.

In the IV century BC ancient Khorezm began flourishing.

In the VI-VII centuries part of the territory of modern Uzbekistan was part of Sogdiana and Bactria, which were dependent on the Turkic Khaganate and Sassanid Empire. After the Arab conquest, it was part of the Arab Khaliphate.



Arabs ruled the country for a long time and in the 13th century the region was captured by the Mongols, and remained a part of the Mongol Empire to the end of the 15th century. In 1363, the reign of Amir Timur as well as his Timurids



dynasty became remarkable. During the times of Ulugbek and Babur, was marked by the development of arts, crafts, trade and flourishing of literature and sciences. In the early of 16th century Bukhara and Khiva Khanate were founded,

however were conquered by Uzbek nomadic tribes, who weakened the khanates.

In the early nineteenth century, three Uzbek khanates—Bukhoro, Khiva, and Quqon (Kokand)—had a brief period of recovery. However, in the mid-nineteenth century Russia, attracted to the region's commercial potential and especially to its cotton, began the full military conquest of Central Asia. By

1876 Russia had incorporated all three khanates (hence all of present-day Uzbekistan) into its empire, granting the khanates limited autonomy. In 1924 of the 19th century Uzbekistan one of the social republics of the



former Soviet Union. After the collapse of the USSR, the political independence of Uzbekistan was proclaimed at the extraordinary VI session of the Supreme Council on August 31, 1991.

## ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

autonomy ( <i>n</i> )	avtonom	автономия
capture ( <i>v</i> )	qo‘lga olish	захватить, поймать,
conquere ( <i>v</i> )	fath qilish	захватить, завоевать
conquest ( <i>n</i> )	zabt etmoq	завоевание
collapse ( <i>v</i> )	inqirozga uchramoq	разрушить, впасть в кризис
establishment ( <i>n</i> )	muassasa, korxonona	учреждение, установление
Extraordinary Session ( <i>w.comb.</i> )	Oliy Majlis	(верховный совет)
flourish ( <i>n, v</i> )	gullash	процветание, расцветать
former ( <i>adj</i> )	qadimgi,	бывший, ранний
intertwine ( <i>v</i> )	bir-biriga bog‘langan	переплетаться
incorporate ( <i>v</i> )	tarkibiga kirmoq	включать в состав
military ( <i>adj</i> )	harbiy kuch	военная сила
nomadic ( <i>adj</i> )	ko‘chmanchi	кочевнические племена
remarkable ( <i>adj</i> )	atoqli	выдающийся
recovery ( <i>n</i> )	tiklash	восстановление
tribes ( <i>n</i> )	qabilalar, urug‘	племена

rule ( <i>n</i> )	qoida	правило, положение
weaken ( <i>v</i> )	kuchsizlanmoq	слабеть

## National Flag and Emblem of Uzbekistan

Throughout the history Uzbekistan, except the reign of Amir Timur has hardly ever been an independent state. Only after becoming an independent state in 1991, The first president – Islam Karimov the political independence of Uzbekistan was proclaimed at the extraordinary VI session of the Supreme Council on August 31, 1991. Today Uzbekistan has its own political, economical and social system of development as well as national symbols, constitution, language, currency.

### *The value of the flag*

Our national flag was adopted on July 2, 1992.



Blue color - a symbol of blue sky and clean water.

This color is revered in the East, it has been chosen once for



their flag and Amir Timur. White color - a symbol of peace and purity.

Red stripes - the life force pulsing in every living being, a symbol of life itself.

Green - embodies the nature.

Crescent meets centuries-old tradition of the people of Uzbekistan. Crescent and star - the symbol of the cloudless sky and the world. On our flag 12 stars that mean eternity (astrological signs). The number 12 is also considered as a sign of perfection.

### *The value of the emblem*

Our national emblem was adopted on November 18, 1992.

In the center of the Emblem of Uzbekistan - Humo bird with wings spread, which is the symbol of happiness and freedom.



At the top of the – eight angled star, with crescent and a star inside. Image of the sun - a wish that the way our country has always been illuminated by a bright light. At the same time, the sun points to the unique natural and climatic conditions of the country.

Wheat – a symbol of sustenance and cotton – our “white gold”, the main wealth of the sunny land.

### **ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:**

adopt ( <i>v</i> )	qabul qilish	утверждать
eternity ( <i>n</i> )	mangulik, abadiylik	вечность, бессмертие
embody ( <i>v</i> )	gavdalanmoq, ichiga olmoq	олицетворять
condition	talab qo‘yimoq, shart qo‘yimoq	условие
illuminate ( <i>v</i> )	oydinlashtirmoq	прясть
peace ( <i>n</i> )	tinchlik, totuvlik	спокойствие, лад
purity ( <i>n</i> )	soflik, tozalik, musaffolik	чистота, непорочность
sustenance ( <i>n</i> )	farovonlik	достаток, поддержание
throughout ( <i>prep</i> )	har tomonlama, to‘la holda	по всему, по всюду
unique ( <i>adj</i> )	tanho, tengi yo‘q, mislsiz	единственный, уникальный

wheat (*n*)

bug‘doy doni

пшеница

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 When did the first states appear on our lands? What were those states?
- 2 Do you know how Alexander the Great conquered Sogdiana and Bactria?
- 3 What happened in the VI century?
- 4 Which of the conquerors ruled for about five centuries?
- 5 When was our land occupied by Mongols?
- 6 Who founded the Bukhara and Khiva Khanates?
- 7 Has Uzbekistan ever been an independent state throughout the history? When?
- 8 When did Uzbekistan get its Independence?
- 9 What are our country’s national symbols and when were they adopted?
- 10 What does each color, the moon and the stars mean on our flag?
- 11 What do bird “humo”, cotton, wheat, valleys, an eight angled star mean on our national emblem?

➤ *Fill in the suitable word from the box*

<b>Refer</b>	<b>capture</b>	<b>establishment</b>	<b>flourishing</b>	<b>rule</b>
<b>depend</b>	<b>intertwined</b>	<b>remained</b>	<b>conquest</b>	<b>to fond</b>

1. The life of different nationalities have been \_\_\_\_\_with the life of local people.
2. It does not \_\_\_\_\_on me only. We both should take measures together.
3. Amir Timur \_\_\_\_\_a great and powerful state during his times.
4. Why don't you \_\_\_\_\_to the dean, if you think that it is unfair.
5. The states of Sogdians and Bactria were \_\_\_\_\_by Alexander the Great in329 B.C..
6. The \_\_\_\_\_of independent state of Uzbekistan in 1991 became a significant day for Uzbek people.
7. Everybody blamed her, but she \_\_\_\_\_calm and indifferent.
8. He always wanted to be a leader and tried to\_\_\_\_\_everything.
9. The Norman \_\_\_\_\_of England was in 1066.
10. Nowadays, Uzbekistan is \_\_\_\_\_day by day.

## Economy of Uzbekistan



Ideally speaking, Uzbekistan has great economic potential from its own resources. In the world production of quality gold, Uzbek gold has won two international prizes. Its large reserves of gold ore are sufficient to make the world's seventh largest gold producer. Besides gold, other metals like cooper, lead, zinc, tungsten, lithium are also produced in Uzbekistan. Even gas, coal and oil are readily available. It is one of the 10 largest exporters of natural gas in the world. The natural recourses of the country are estimated to total over 3 trillion USD. Explored mineral reserves are available for industrial processing total USD 870 billion..

Agriculture is highly developed in Uzbekistan. Uzbekistan is the world's fourth largest cotton producer. The high quality Uzbek cotton has made it



very popular with the European and Asian markets. About 5 million tons of vegetables and fruits are exported to Commonwealth countries because of their specific taste, texture and variety. Uzbekistan is also one of the international exporter, for furs and fine wines. The Bukhara Distillery is famous for its distillery.

On the creation of modernized communication system, Uzbekistan is working closely with a few Japanese, German and Turkish companies in order to create better telecommunication systems.

In terms of industrial infrastructure the fuel and energy, mining and processing industries, light industry, machine building, aviation, chemical industry, food industry, civil engineering and production, textile and oil processing industries are well developed.



Likewise, the cooperation with other countries is aimed to find out relationship with the most important transport system and sea ways. There's even a railway system being built from Turkmenistan, passing the Iranian ports to the Indian Ocean for greater excess to other parts of the world.

Therefore, with the development of such a modern communication system, Uzbekistan is bond to create better international development on tourism in the near future.

Currently, Uzbekistan is encouraging foreigners with foreign capital to open banks with the help of the World Bank and some of the European banks.

Uzbekistan is always paving the way and relationship with other countries.

Apart, from the above mentioned, Uzbekistan has about 1,000 joint ventures with the Germans on “Merceded Benz” and “Simians”, the South Koreans on “Daewoo” and “Samsung”, the Japanese on “Mitsubishi”, as well as with Italian,



British and French companies that are surely but slowly emerging from the Uzbek's economic scene.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

available ( <i>adj</i> )	yaroqli	доступный
besides( <i>adv</i> )	tashqari, boshqa	кроме того
bond ( <i>n</i> )	rishta, aloqa	связь, узы
excess ( <i>n</i> )	ortiqchalik	излишек
emerge ( <i>v</i> )	paydo bo'lmoq	всплывать
encourage ( <i>v</i> )	rag'batlantirish	поощрять
in terms of	shartlariga binoan	с точки зрения
likewise ( <i>adv</i> )	shunday tarzda	подобно
fur ( <i>n</i> )	mo'yna	мех
relationship ( <i>n</i> )	munosabatlar	отношения
resource ( <i>n</i> )	manba	ресурс
taste ( <i>n, v</i> )	ta'm	вкус, пробовать на вкус
scene ( <i>n</i> )	sahna	сцена

### SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 Why does Uzbekistan have great economic potential?
- 2 What is the place of Uzbekistan in the world according to its gold

reserves?

- 3 What natural resources does Uzbekistan export?
- 4 What is the value of mineral reserves are available for industrial processing?
- 5 What is the rank of Uzbekistan's cotton production?
- 6 What agricultural products, besides cotton, does Uzbekistan export?
- 7 What is the reason of a big volume for exports of fruits and vegetables?
- 8 What sectors of industry are well developed in Uzbekistan?
- 9 What changes have been done to create better international development on tourism in the near future?
- 10 What is being done in the banking system of Uzbekistan? What kind of joint ventures are there in Uzbekistan?

➤ *Fill in the suitable word from the box*

<b>Specific</b>	<b>explore</b>	<b>available</b>	<b>to be</b>	<b>emerge</b>
<b>Market</b>	<b>Quality</b>	<b>Encourage</b>	<b>estimated</b>	<b>relationship</b>

- 1 The \_\_\_\_\_ of this product is very high.
- 2 Mr. Smith is not \_\_\_\_\_ now. He is meeting right now.
- 3 This meal has a \_\_\_\_\_ taste. It is delicious.
- 4 The scientists \_\_\_\_\_ the north.
- 5 The export of natural resources of Uzbekistan \_\_\_\_\_ as 3 trillion USD.
- 6 Uzbekistan \_\_\_\_\_ the way to friendly development with all

countries of the world.

- 7 If you look closer at this situation, some problems will\_\_\_\_\_ .
- 8 Uzbekistan's \_\_\_\_\_ are rich, colorful and bright.
- 9 My teacher \_\_\_\_\_ me to apply for a scholarship program.
- 10 Our \_\_\_\_\_with neighboring countries is strong and reliable.

## LEARNING WITH MODERN PEDAGOGICAL TECHNOLOGIES

### CONCEPTUAL TABLE

- *Fill in the table with the required information using the knowledge you have and obtained*

<b>Conquest</b>	<b>The ruler</b>	<b>The period</b>	<b><i>The situation in the country</i></b>

### ***“T” TABLE***

- *After reading the text on Economy of Uzbekistan, fill in the “T” table with your ideas according to the tasks for each column*

<b>Sectors of industry that need to be well developed in the condition of Uzbekistan</b>	<b>Sectors of industry that need to be not much developed in the condition of Uzbekistan</b>

# *Cities of Uzbekistan*

*Uzbekistan is a country of an ancient civilization. There are thousands of monuments of archaeology and architecture preserved on its territory, especially in such historical cities as Tashkent, Samarkand, Buhara, Khiva and others.*

## **Tashkent**



Tashkent one of the largest ancient cities in Central Asia is the capital of Uzbekistan. Tashkent was also known as Chach during the ancient time. Chach was famous for exporting gold, precious stones, fruits and beautiful horses to other cities and states. With all the ongoing Chach was at the crossroads of international trade, center of a farming oasis and a city of crafts and arts. Tashkent has a population of more than 2 million. Tashkent in Uzbek means “the Stone Settlement” and is also known as a city of striking contrasts. Today Tashkent is one of the industrial centers in central Asia that manufactures and repairs modern aircrafts. Besides being industrialized, Tashkent is also the center for agriculture and textile industries. The Academy of Sciences of Uzbekistan was established here. Other such scientific centers introduced at that time were the Institute of Nuclear Physics, Institutes of electronics, Mathematics, Astronomy, Mechanics and Seismology. Tashkent has nearly 20 museums and the Uzbek Art Museum has one of the largest collection of sculptures, paintings and handicrafts in Central Asia. Another Uzbek Museum of Applied arts displays 30, 000 exhibits of handicrafts, embroidery, traditional jewelry, etc.

The most interesting part of Tashkent is an old town near Iski-juva Bazaar, the largest market place which sells from cooked food to clothing, the entrance of the bazaar is the Khast-Imam Complex which looks like a scene

from the Arabian Nights! Its centerpiece is the Barkhan Madrasah, a magnificent monument of the 16<sup>th</sup> century. The Al-Bukhari Islamic Institute which trains Moslem clergy for the former republics of the Soviet union is also located in this complex. The influence of the Islam religion is apparent of the People's Friendship Square. Recently, the 100-year old Abdul Kasim Madrasah was restored and reshaped to commemorate the city's 2,000<sup>th</sup> anniversary.

After the devastating earthquake in 1966, the new Tashkent emerged with beautiful parks, and squares that were decorated with fountains. Even some of the ancient and well-known architecture from the Middle Ages like the Unus-Khona mausoleum, the Kukaldesh madrasah and the Borakhona madrasah are still standing in Tashkent. Tashkent is now considered to be one of the most beautiful city with plenty of greenery and water.

There are three underground railways which connect the eastern, western and south-western parts of the city. Tourists are usually taken to Tashkent Metro and are quick to express their administration for the fabulous decorations. The Tashkent Metro is truly amazing and is considered to be one of the most beautiful in the world.

Today, modern technology and telecommunication have turned Tashkent into a busy gate-way to other parts of Uzbekistan as well as to other parts of the world. Tashkent is the capital of friendship and many international conferences, cinema-festivals, symposiums have taken place in this capital city of Uzbekistan. A charming mixture of old and new, Tashkent comes highly recommended as a place for relaxation and holiday.

### **ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:**

amazing ( <i>adj</i> )	ajoyib	удивительный
commemorate ( <i>v</i> )	xotirada saqlamoq	читать память

display ( <i>n, v</i> )	namoyish qilish	дисплей, выставлять на показ
embroidery( <i>v</i> )	bezamoq	орнамент, вышивание
fabulous ( <i>adj</i> )	afsonaviy	сказочный, легендарный
influence ( <i>n</i> )	ta'sir ko'rsatish	влияние
introduce ( <i>v</i> )	tanishtirmoq	вводить, представлять
magnificent ( <i>adj</i> )	muhtasham	великолепный
manufacture ( <i>v, n</i> )	ishlab chiqarmoq	производство, производить
nuclear ( <i>adj, n</i> )	yadroviy	ядерный, ядро
ongoing ( <i>adj, n</i> )	davom etayotgan	происходящий
plenty ( <i>adv</i> )	ko'p, serob	много, множество
repair ( <i>n,v</i> )	ta'mirlamoq	ремонт, ремонтировать
reshape	tiklash	восстановить
restore	qayta qurish	реставрировать

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 What is the ancient name of Tashkent?
- 2 What is the population of Tashkent?
- 3 What kind of scientific centers have you known from the text?
- 4 About how many museums are there in Tashkent?
- 5 What is the most interesting place in Tashkent which looks like Arabian Nights?
- 6 What kind of Madrasah and mausoleums are there in Tashkent?
- 7 What happened in 1966 in Tashkent?
- 8 How many lines are there in Tashkent underground?
- 9 What are they?
- 10 Why is Tashkent called a charming mixture of old and new?

➤ Fill in the suitable word from the box

<b>ancient</b>	<b>striking</b>	<b>decorate</b>	<b>consider</b>	<b>connect</b>
<b>magnificent</b>	<b>crossroad</b>	<b>collection</b>	<b>devastating</b>	<b>turn into</b>

- 1 The \_\_\_\_\_ cities of Uzbekistan, Samarkand, Bukhara, and Khiva attract more and more tourists from all over the world.
- 2 For most families, it is a tradition \_\_\_\_\_ a New year tree with family members.
- 3 Our manager \_\_\_\_\_ this problem as the most actual in the company.
- 4 Uzbekistan is located \_\_\_\_\_ at the junction of Great Silk Road.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ Samarkand is flourishing year by year combining the mixture of old and new.
- 6 I can't get him through. I shall try to \_\_\_\_\_ with him later. The line is engaged.
- 7 The circumstances made her to be strong and persistent and \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_ a real struggler.
- 8 This \_\_\_\_\_ news will spread very quickly among people.
- 9 It is my hobby. I have a big \_\_\_\_\_ of stamps.
- 10 The devastating earthquake in Tashkent made people join and strengthen peoples friendship.

## Samarkand – Rome of the East



Samarkand is situated in the valley of the river Zarafshan. It is the second largest city of Uzbekistan and is of the same age as the city of Babylon or Rome. The history of Samarkand is about 2,500 years old and has witnessed a lot of upheavals during the times

of Alexander the Great, the Arabic Conquest, Genghis-Khan Conquest and lastly Tamerlane's. Hence, the culture of Samarkand was developed and mixed together with the Iranian, Indian, Mongolian and a bit of the Western and Eastern cultures.

Majestic and beautiful city Samarkand has a marvelous and attractive power. Poets and historians of the past called it "Rome of the East, The beauty of sublunary countries, the pearl of the Eastern Muslim World". Its advantageous geographical position in Zarafshan valley put Samarkand to the first place among cities of Central Asia.

Over the history this legendary city on the Silk Road went through growths and decays, suffered from destroying invasions of foreign rulers, revived, becoming more beautiful. Trade routes to the west, to Persia, to the east, to China, to the south, to India, intersected here and formed intersections of the Silk Road.

Today Samarkand is the treasure of unique antiquity spirit. It is included in the UNESCO World Heritage List due to the abundance of material and spiritual values.

Unique monuments of ancient architecture, heritage of scientific and arts schools, workshops are well-known around the world.

### **ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:**

abundance ( <i>n</i> )	mo‘llik, mo‘lchilik,	изобилие
antiquity ( <i>adj</i> )	uzoq o‘tmish, qadimgi	древность
a bit ( <i>adv</i> )	ozgina	немного
decay ( <i>v</i> )	kuchsizlanmoq, zaiflashmoq	распад
destroy ( <i>v</i> )	vayron qilmoq, buzmoq	уничтожать

growths	o'sishi	рост, развитие
heritage (n)	madaniy meros	наследство
intersection (v)	kesib o'tmoq, bo'lmoq	пересечение
pearl (n)	dur	жемчужина
route (n)	yo'nalish	маршрут
revive (v)	jonlantirish	возрождать
sublunary (adj)	sublunary	подлунный
suffer (v)	azob chekdi	страдать
spiritual (adj)	ma'naviy	духовный
upheaval (n)	shafqatsizlik	переворот, сдвиг
valley (n)	vodiy	долина
witness (n)	guvoh	свидетель

## ***How Samarkand got its name***

*A long time ago, in a region of Central Asia, there was a great and wicked king who lived in a beautiful castle. One day his wife gave birth to a beautiful daughter and they named her Kant, which means sugar in the Uzbek language.*

*About the same time, there was a baby boy born to a very poor family. They named him Samar, because he was handsome and strong. As he grew up, he became very famous for his bravery, and he competed in all the athletic events.*

*One day the princess met the young man in the garden of the castle. They were so attracted to each other that they agreed to meet every day in the garden. As they got to know each other, their love grew stronger and stronger. One day Kant's father learned of their secret meetings and became very angry. He did not like Samar because he was very poor, and considered him beneath his daughter.*

*When Kant told her father that she wanted to wed Samar, the king decided to kill him. When the broken hearted Kant learned of his death, she threw herself from the top of the castle. All of the people of the city were grief-stricken, and they renamed their city Samarkand after the two lovers.*

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

agree ( <i>v</i> )	kelishmoq	соглашаться
attract ( <i>v</i> )	jalb qilmoq	привлекать
beneath ( <i>adv</i> )	ostida, zarariga, ziyoniga	под, подо
bravery ( <i>adj</i> )	mard, jasur, qo‘rqmas	храбрость
castle ( <i>n</i> )	qasir, qal’а	замок
compete ( <i>v</i> )	musobaqalashmoq	конкурировать
consider ( <i>v</i> )	muhokama qilmoq	рассматривать
grief-stricken ( <i>adj</i> )	qayg‘uga botgan	огорчённым горем
handsome ( <i>adj</i> )	kelishgan, ulkan, katta	статный (о мужчине)
means ( <i>n</i> )	usul, uslub, metod	средство
poor ( <i>adj</i> )	faqir, kambag‘al, g‘arb	бедный
sugar ( <i>n</i> )	shakar	сахар
wicked ( <i>adj</i> )	axloqsiz	злой, безнравственный

### SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 What is the geographical location of Samarkand?
- 2 What upheavals did Samarkand witness?
- 3 Why does Samarkand have marvelous and attractive power?

- 4 What architectural and historical places of Samarkand have you ever visited?
- 5 What routes did Samarkand intersect in the past?
- 6 What is the Registan Square used nowadays for?
- 7 Have you read or heard of any legends or stories of Samarkand's buildings?
- 8 How did poets and historian of the past glorify Samarkand?
- 9 What is the secret of Samarkand reviving and becoming more beautiful after destroying invasions of foreign rulers?
- 10 What is "World Heritage List"?

➤ *Fill in the suitable word from the box*

<b>mix</b>	<b>suffer</b>	<b>spiritual</b>	<b>castle</b>	<b>unique</b>
<b>sublunary</b>	<b>attractive</b>	<b>majestic</b>	<b>abundance</b>	<b>value</b>

- 1 You shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ the meaning of these two words.
- 2 Look. What \_\_\_\_\_ attractive woman she is!
- 3 This \_\_\_\_\_ is very ancient. It was built long centuries ago.
- 4 The \_\_\_\_\_ of this ring is more than 2000 dollars.
- 5 The \_\_\_\_\_ of Taj Mahal is hardly ever found in the world.
- 6 He has a \_\_\_\_\_ ability to persuade people in his honesty. People easily trust him.
- 7 The \_\_\_\_\_ education of our young generation is very important.
- 8 The \_\_\_\_\_ city Samarkand have been famous for many centuries.
- 9 She \_\_\_\_\_ a lot from her illness, but at last she found a treatment.
- 10 The hero of this book ha a \_\_\_\_\_ power that can control people.

## Bukhara - the Holy City



Bukhara is one of the most ancient cities of Uzbekistan, situated on a sacred hill, the place where sacrifices were made by fire-worshippers in springtime. This city was mentioned in a holy book "Avesto". Bukhara city is supposed to be founded in the 13th cent. B.C. during the reign of Siyavushids who came to power 980 years before Alexander the Great. The name of Bukhara originates from the word "vihara" which means "monastery" in Sanskrit. The city was once a large commercial center on the Great Silk Road.

Bukhara lies west of Samarkand and was once a center of learning renowned throughout the Islamic world. It is the hometown of the great Sheikh Bahautdin Nakshbandi. He was a central figure in the development of the mystical Sufi approach to philosophy, religion and Islam. In Bukhara there are more than 350 mosques and 100 religious colleges. Its fortunes waxed and waned through succeeding empires until it became one of the great Central Asian Khanates in the 17th century.

Bukhara with more than 140 architectural monuments is a "town museum" dating back to the Middle Ages. 2,300 years later, ensembles like the Poi-Kalon, Kos Madras, Ismail Samani Mausoleum and the Kalian Minaret are attracting a lot of attention. The city consists of narrow streets, green parks and gardens, historical and architectural monuments belong to the different epochs, but locate very close to each other.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

commercial ( <i>adj</i> )	tijorat, tijoriy	коммерческий
mention ( <i>v</i> )	eslatmoq	напоминать

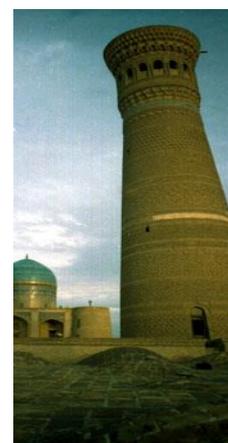
originate (v)	vujudga kelmoq	происходить
power (n)	imkoniyat, qobiliyat	власть, сила
sacrifice (n, v)	fido qilish	жертва, жертвовать
situate (v)	joylashgan, o‘rnatish	размещать
succeed (v)	muvaffaqiyat qozonmoq	преуспевать, следовать цели

## ***Legend of Minaret Kalon***

*In Central Asia, in what is now known as the country of Uzbekistan, there is a great tower. It is situated in the ancient city of Bukhara. The people call it Minaret Kalon, which translated means, "The Great Tower", but it is also known as the "Tower of Death". There are many legends about the tower. Many people have been executed there as they were pushed to their deaths from the top.*

*Long ago there was a Shah who had a wife. He was a very cruel man and decided to have her killed by having her pushed from the top of the tower. But she was a very clever woman, and begged of him that he grant her one wish. He agreed and when the day of her death arrived, she put on all her gowns and petticoats.*

*She climbed to the top of the tower while all the people waited on the square below and watched. When she jumped, it was like a miracle. She didn't die, her dresses parachuted her gently to the earth below.*



[https://orexca.com/legends\\_kalon.shtml](https://orexca.com/legends_kalon.shtml)

### **ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:**

ancient (adj)	qadimgi	древний
climb (v)	yuqoriga chiqmoq	поднимитесь вверх, вскарабкаться
decide (v)	qaror qilingan	решать
mean (n)	anglatmoq, ifodalamoq	значить, означать

miracle ( <i>n</i> )	mo'jiza	чудо
parachute ( <i>n, v</i> )	parashut(lash)	парашют, парашютировать

### SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 What kind of place is Bukhara situated on?
- 2 What kind of holy book is the city mentioned?
- 3 Whose reign was in Bukhara before Alexander the Great?
- 4 What word does Bukhara originate from and what does it mean?
- 5 Whose famous Islamic thinker's hometown is Bukhara?
- 6 How many mosques and religious colleges are there in Bukhara?
- 7 What form of government did Bukhara obtain on the 17<sup>th</sup> century?
- 8 What kind of ensembles are there in Bukhara?
- 9 How are the ancient ensembles located in Bukhara?
- 10 What legends of Bukhara's ancient architecture do you know?

➤ *Fill in the suitable word from the box*

<b>mention</b>	<b>lie</b>	<b>suppose</b>	<b>once</b>	<b>belong to</b>
<b>reign</b>	<b>Sacred</b>	<b>approach</b>	<b>consist of</b>	<b>holy</b>

- 1 Though she knows you, she didn't \_\_\_\_\_ your name.
- 2 Bukhara is a \_\_\_\_\_ city, where religious ceremonies took place
- 3 You should have a special \_\_\_\_\_ to communicate with him.
- 4 The book \_\_\_\_\_ 3 chapters.

- 5 I \_\_\_\_\_they will never return to their home country.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_you remember me, but it will be too late.
- 7 “My heart \_\_\_\_\_you”, said Samar to his beloved Kant.
- 8 Nurata is a \_\_\_\_\_place where people go for pilgrimage.
- 9 During the \_\_\_\_\_of Amir Timur, the Movaraunnahr flourished and developed.
- 10 The city\_\_\_\_\_to the west-north of Uzbekistan.

## Navoi

Navoi is the real oasis in the steppe. It is the youngest city of the country. The Government Decree started its construction in 1958. It was named after the great Uzbek poet, scientist and state figure Alisher Navoi. The city has economic importance and is the largest industrial center of the western



part of Uzbekistan. The city became, as it were, the outpost of desert development.

Though the city is very young, this area and surroundings of current Navoi has rich history. In ancient times the Great Silk Road passed through these lands. Also findings of numerous traces of Ancient Saki, Khorezm, Baktriya cultures resulted from archeological researches of the area.

According to Navoi history, the land on which today the city is, truly cherishes the memory of millennia of its centuries. Archaeologists have found evidence of the existence of numerous cultural centers are ancient Saks, Khorezm, Bactrian. Excavations Varakhsha and Babkent enabled the modern

world to learn about the ancient civilizations that were destroyed by raids and strife, and subsequently buried in the sands of time in the mighty.

In ancient times, the Great silk Road passed the city of Kermine. Kermine played an important role that connected Samarkand and Bukhara.

Earlier in place of Navoi was Kermine village, once part of the Bukhara Khanate. In 1958, according to the decision of the Government in the area of the village began construction of a mining and metallurgical complex, and was founded a new town, which was named Navoi, in honor of the famous oriental poet Alisher Navoi. This highly industrial city has a good geographical location: it is situated at an altitude of 347 meters above sea level, on the left bank of the river Zarafshan, 100 km north-east of Bukhara, 45 kilometers from Navoi there is the Sarmish Gorge – “the biggest stone mural gallery in the world”. On the area of two kilometers length you will find almost four thousands petroglyphs of various periods. Researchers have found here strange paintings, representing “ancient astronauts” in the mysterious gorge of Sarmish.

Today Navoi city is one of the leading industrial centers of Uzbekistan. It has Navoi Mining & Metallurgical Combinat, producing gold, JSC “Navoiazot”, specializing on production of mineral fertilizers, ammonia and artificial Nitron Fiber, electrochemical plant. In addition, Navoi has Navoi Hydropower station, the largest in Uzbekistan JSC “Kyzylkumcement” and many others industrial projects of republican importance.

All industrial enterprises are concentrated in the industrial zone at the western border of the city, 2 km from the borders of residential areas. In its structure, the city of Navoi best meets the requirements of modern urban planning, which is a rational complex organization of industrial zones, residential areas, a network of public and community institutions and transport, which provide the best working environment and recreation. FIEZ abbreviation stands for Free Industrial Economic Zone in Navoi. President of Uzbekistan Islam Karimov: "Free Industrial Economic Zone in Navoi became

the first full-fledged free zone in the CIS, without exaggeration, to have a positive impact on the economic development of not only the Republic of Uzbekistan, but the entire Central Asian region in general.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

cherish ( <i>v</i> )	mehr ko‘rsatmoq	нежно любить
enable ( <i>v</i> )	imkoniyat bermoq	давать возможность
exaggeration ( <i>n</i> )	bo‘rttirish	преувеличение
geographical location ( <i>w.comb</i> )	geografik joylashuvi	географическое положение
gorge ( <i>n</i> )	tor dara, dara	теснина, ущелье
impact ( <i>n, v</i> )	ta’sir	влияние
mineral fertilizers ( <i>w.comb</i> )	mineral o‘g‘it	минеральные удобрения
full-fledged ( <i>adj</i> )	teng huquqli	полноправный
research ( <i>n</i> )	izlanish, tadqiqot	исследование
result ( <i>n</i> )	natija	результат
raids ( <i>n</i> )	qo‘qqisdan bostirib kirish, bosqin, hujum	набег
requirement ( <i>n</i> )	talab	требование
rational ( <i>adj</i> )	ratsional	рациональный
strife ( <i>n</i> )	nizo, adovat	раздор
though ( <i>conj</i> )	-sa ham, shunday bo‘lsa ham	хотя, несмотря на
trace ( <i>n</i> )	nishon, iz	след

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 What was the old name of Navoi?
- 2 Does the city have a rich history in spite of its youth?
- 3 What kind of architectural findings were found in Navoi?
- 4 What was the role of Kermine?
- 5 What city did Kermine belong to before 1958?
- 6 What kind of industrial construction was started in Navoi on 1958?
- 7 In your opinion why was the city named after great poet of Alisher Navoi in spite of its industrial construction?
- 8 What are the favourite geographical conditions there in Navoi?
- 9 What other industrial objects are there in Navoi?
- 10 What is the abbreviation of FIEZ stand for and how important is it in the republic?

➤ *Fill in the suitable word from the box*

<b>desert</b>	<b>altitude</b>	<b>enable</b>	<b>gorge</b>	<b>provide</b>
<b>evidence</b>	<b>cherish</b>	<b>anomalous</b>	<b>oriental</b>	<b>impact</b>

- 1 Though the city is a \_\_\_\_\_ area, it has favourite geographical conditions.
- 2 I couldn't recognize him. His behavior was \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 3 A lot of \_\_\_\_\_ scientists, such as Ulugbek, ibn Sina, Al Khorezmey made a great contribution to the world civilization.
- 4 The archeological findings are the \_\_\_\_\_ of ancient history of Navoi.
- 5 You should \_\_\_\_\_ some evidence of what you have told.
- 6 Navoi is situated at an \_\_\_\_\_ of 347 meters above sea level, on the

left bank of the river Zarafshan.

- 7 In the ancient \_\_\_\_\_ of Sarmish, a lot of petroglyphs of various periods have been found.
- 8 FIEZ is a positive \_\_\_\_\_ for industrial development.
- 9 This opportunity \_\_\_\_\_ you to apply for this work
- 10 She \_\_\_\_\_ the kindness feelings towards to her children.

## LEARNING WITH MODERN PEDAGOGICAL TECHNOLOGIES

### *FIVE MINUTE ESSAY*

➤ *You are going to visit one of the historical places of Uzbekistan. Take five minutes to write about the city you have chosen explaining the the reason of your visiting that city*

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

### **“T” TABLE**

➤ *Think of the advantageous and disadvantageous of living in your native town and then fill in the “T” table with your ideas according to the tasks for each column*

<b>Advantages of living in your native town</b>	<b>Disadvantages of living in your native town</b>

# *The culture*



# *the heritage*



# *the people*



*The Uzbek people has an interesting rich cultural heritage from the merging of centuries old and modern civilization. It is one of the brightest and original cultures of East. It is inimitable national music, dances and painting, unique national kitchen and clothes.*

## **Customs and traditions of Uzbek people**

Customs and traditions of Uzbek people have been forming for centuries. They are very distinctive, impressive and different, dating back to different epochs and religions. Initial formation of Uzbek culture dates back to the 6th-7th centuries BC, when nomadic tribes settled in the valleys of Amu-Darya, Syr-Darya and Zarafshan and founded first states. Former nomads founded settlements and cities, bringing with them customs and traditions based on ancient cults of their ancestors. Territory of today Uzbekistan, a land between two rivers, being a part of early states, became the basis for formation of cultures, which subsequently became the basis of Uzbek culture.

Over centuries traditions and customs of Uzbek people had been remained almost unchanged despite the desire of many invaders to impose alien culture on. Arabs had the greatest influence on Uzbek customs and traditions, through the extension of Islam throughout Central Asia. Islam traditions were closely intertwined with local culture and firmly settled in the mode and minds of Uzbek people.

Centuries-old customs and traditions of Uzbek people are carefully maintained and passed on from generation to generation. Like many Asian nations, most festive Uzbek customs are related with major family celebrations: births and weddings. These events include many rites and rituals, involving parents, children, brothers, sisters, immediate and remote relatives as well as neighbors and guests. Each one has its own role. Uzbek traditions are based on hospitality, respect for elders, observance of rules of the Koran.

## ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

alien ( <i>adj</i> )	begona	зд. чужой
basis ( <i>n</i> )	asos, negiz	основа
celebration ( <i>n</i> )	bayram, tantana	праздник, торжество
date back ( <i>v</i> )	sanasini yozmoq	датироваться
distinctive ( <i>adj</i> )	ajaratib turuvchi	отличительный
extension ( <i>n</i> )	kengaytirish, uzaytirish	расширение, продление
festive ( <i>adj</i> )	bayramona, tantanali	праздничный, торжественный
guest ( <i>n</i> )	mehmon	гость
impose ( <i>v</i> )	o‘ramoq, qoplamoq	облагать, навязовать
impressive ( <i>adj</i> )	ta’sirli	впечатляющий
initial ( <i>adj</i> )	boshlang‘ich	начальный
intertwined ( <i>adj</i> )	muqovalangan	переплетенный
maintain ( <i>v</i> )	qo‘llab-quvvatlamoq	поддерживать
respect for ( <i>n</i> )	hurmat	уважение к
rite ( <i>n</i> )	rasm-rusum, udum	обряд
subsequently ( <i>adv</i> )	pirovardida, oqibatida	впоследствии
wedding ( <i>n</i> )	to‘y	свадьба

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 How long have traditions and customs of Uzbek people been forming?

- 2 Why are traditions and customs of the Uzbek distinctive, impressive and different?
- 3 What was the territory of today's Uzbekistan?
- 4 Had traditions and customs of Uzbek people been remained unchanged over the centuries? Why?
- 5 Who had greater influence on the Uzbek culture?
- 6 Was Islam religion intertwined with local traditions and customs?
- 7 Did the traditions and customs pass from generation to generation? Why were they not forgotten?
- 8 What are the most festive celebrations of Uzbek people?
- 9 Who are usually invited for celebrations?
- 10 What are Uzbek traditions and customs based on?

➤ *Fill in the suitable word from the box*

<b>distinctive</b>	<b>ancestor</b>	<b>subsequently</b>	<b>maintain</b>	<b>festive</b>
<b>tribe</b>	<b>impressive</b>	<b>nomadic</b>	<b>remote</b>	<b>extension</b>

- 1 Sags and Massagets are the ancient \_\_\_\_\_ of ancient Movaraunnahr.
- 2 Her \_\_\_\_\_ character – persistence and hardworking always helped to grow in her career.
- 3 People of different ethnic origin have been living in Uzbekistan, \_\_\_\_\_ the cultures and views are interrelated among people.
- 4 She seems to be my \_\_\_\_\_ relative, as I did not recognize her at the wedding yesterday, though she was among my immediate

relatives.

- 5 The colors of khan atlas are so \_\_\_\_\_that I took a sight for a long time.
- 6 Most \_\_\_\_\_ceremonies and event of the Uzbek people are usually related with weddings.
- 7 Uzbek people\_\_\_\_\_traditions and customs from their ancestors.
- 8 She took an \_\_\_\_\_for her sick leave, because she did not cure from her illness.
- 9 In spite of life difficulties, she \_\_\_\_\_to keep her family friendly and safely.
- 10 People of ancient Uzbekistan had a \_\_\_\_\_way of life.

## The Nature of Uzbek People

People in Uzbekistan are known for their hospitality, friendly and peaceful nature. The people of Uzbekistan belong to diverse categories and ethnic races.

The population of Uzbekistan comprises the ethnic groups of Uzbeks, Karakalpaks, Russians, Tajiks, Kazakhs, Tatars and many others. The people in Uzbekistan are famous throughout the world because of their amicable nature and courteous attitude.

The cultural and traditional heritage of the Uzbekistan people keep them united. “Shashmaqam” is the exquisite traditional music form of Uzbekistan that precisely states the affectionate nature of these music loving people. This music form fuses six different styles of songs. That has been derived from the various ethnic groups residing in Uzbekistan. Persian and Sufi music also has greatly influenced on it.



The people of Uzbekistan are fair with interesting facial features. The features vary with their origin. Some people have small eyes and sharp nose while some have flat features. Usually they are tall and stout people. The Uzbek people are very conscious and follow discipline in whatever they do. A casual meeting may also be honored through traditional customs like serving tea and raising toast (ovmin)<sup>3</sup>. The Uzbek people greet people to their house at any hour of the day. It is customary to embrace or kiss on the cheek of their near and dear ones on meeting, after a long period. These people live a simple but an elegant lifestyle. Their professional fields are mainly family business or agricultural activities.

The Uzbek people are very much family oriented people, who dedicate their every minute of leisure to family members.

#### **ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:**

amicable ( <i>adj</i> )	do‘stona	дружный
affectionate ( <i>adj</i> )	mehrli	любящий
categories ( <i>n</i> )	toifalar	категории
comprise ( <i>v</i> )	o‘z ichiga olmoq	содержать, состоять из
courteous	boadab	учтивый
influence ( <i>v</i> )	ta’sir, ta’sir qilmoq	влияние, влиять
honored ( <i>adj</i> )	sharaflangan	заслуженный
peaceful ( <i>adj</i> )	tinch	мирное

---

<sup>3</sup> Ovmin- is a ritual of wishing peace and happiness, prosperity and sustainability, health and long life to family members or all people before starting and finishing having a meal. Frequently, it can be followed after reading Koran’s parts (sura) at large gatherings for some kind of traditional occasions.

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 What are the main qualities of Uzbek people?
- 2 What kind of music is considered as the most traditional and national?
- 3 What are the facial features of Uzbek people?
- 4 What keeps Uzbek people united?
- 5 Why is the bread considered holy for the Uzbeks?
- 6 How distinguishing is the Uzbek's greeting from other nations?
- 7 What is the life style of Uzbek people?
- 8 What is the attitude of Uzbek people towards to their families?
- 9 What does "ovmin" mean for Uzbek people?
- 10 How would you appreciate the Uzbek culture and traditions? Do you think there are inappropriate cultural views of the Uzbek people?

➤ *Fill in the suitable word from the box*

<b>fuse</b>	<b>derive</b>	<b>exquisite</b>	<b>precisely</b>	<b>conscious</b>
<b>comprise</b>	<b>affectionate</b>	<b>amicable</b>	<b>casual</b>	<b>embrace</b>

- 1 The population of Uzbekistan \_\_\_\_\_different nationalities and ethnic groups.
- 2 The dispute was solved in a \_\_\_\_\_way.
- 3 When you are happy, you are ready to \_\_\_\_\_the whole world.
- 4 You can't appear in an office in your \_\_\_\_\_clothes. It is not

appropriate.

- 5 Please, report all the details, but in a \_\_\_\_\_way so that everybody can understand your report.
- 6 The customs and traditions of various nationalities and ethnic groups of Uzbekistan\_\_\_\_\_into one lifestyle that is willingly obeyed by the nation.
- 7 The meaning of the word “Uzbek” was \_\_\_\_\_ from the two word “Uz” and “bek” that means owner of himself.
- 8 The relation of the people in both large and small families should be accompanied with \_\_\_\_\_care.
- 9 Both\_\_\_\_\_way of dressing and manner of your behavior of speech are very important at the ceremonies of upper class society.
- 10 He was \_\_\_\_\_of his guilt and he could not sleep for a month until he apologized.

## The Uzbek National Cuisine

For those who do not know, Uzbek cuisine is one of the most colorful of Oriental Cuisines. You’ll be amazed to find some of the Uzbek recipes are centuries old. They even have various traditional rituals and ways of the preparing and cooking. They are even have various traditional rituals and ways of preparing and cooking. There are about 1,000 different species and these includes national drinks, cakes, and confectionary products.



Uzbek palov is a very solemn dish. It can be considered an everyday dish as well as dish doe solemn and great events like weddings, parties, and holidays. Rice is the most important component of palov and special species,

raisins, peas or quinces will be added to give it extra flavor. It makes this dish very tasty and useful especially after long illness. However, locals believe that the best palov is always prepared by a man! Salads are served as additional dishes to the palov. One of the famous Uzbek appetizers is “kasy” horse sausage.

Bread is considered to be holy for the Uzbek people. This traditional belief started in the ancient times and there is a legend behind this. The legend claims that each new Governor would mint his own coins but the payment for the local people for minting new coins were not the coins that were minted but .....bread!



According to tradition, when someone, leaves the family he bites a small pie of Obi-non (Uzbek bread) and then it is buried until the traveler comes back and eat the whole bread. The tradition of putting bread into a basket and wearing the basket on the head also shows respectful attitude towards the bread. Traditionally Uzbek breads in most places it is baked by men inside the stoves made of clay called tandyr. These fragrant breads are known to be crispy and tasty. Even the great scientist of medicine, Avicenna used the Uzbek bread to cure people from diseases.

There are however, two various of flatbreads – the common and the fancy ones. Common flatbreads (obi-non/iy-non) are baked from wheat flower with leaven. When baked,



their surface is glossy and is sprinkled with sesame seeds or poppy seeds. The Fancy flatbreads are called “Patyr” and may be made from pastry or puff pastry with mutton fat added to keep it fresh for a long time.

Special importance is placed on soups. Uzbek soup is rich with vegetables and seasonings and contain lots of carrot, turnips, onions and greens. Two popular soups available are mastava and shurpa. Other favourite are the shashlyk and samsa.



Halva is made of wheat flour, sugar with nuts or sesame seeds as toppings and is a traditionally Eastern candy famous all over the world. Halva is especially sweet and delicious and is considered a must at weddings. It is customary for an Uzbek youth during courtship, to bring halva for his fiancée. When a baby girl is born into an Uzbek family, she is usually referred to as “halva”. There are 50 different types of halva in Uzbekistan. Uzbekistan is famous for its tasty juices prepared from fruits like grapes, rock-melons, water-melons and rose petals. Uzbek also serve dry fruits, nuts and almonds which they are well known. Make sure you try all the Uzbek cuisine if possible and ask for the recipe if you like a particular dish.

#### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

almond ( <i>n</i> )	bodom	миндаль
attitude ( <i>n</i> )	munosabat	отношение
bite ( <i>v</i> )	tishlab uzib olmoq	откусывать
colorful ( <i>adj</i> )	rangli	красочный
cuisine ( <i>n</i> )	oshxona	кухня
customary ( <i>adj</i> )	odatiy	обычный
flatbread ( <i>n</i> )	obinon, kulcha	лепешка
fragrant ( <i>adj</i> )	xushbo‘y, muattar	душистый
grapes ( <i>n</i> )	uzum	виноград
melon ( <i>n</i> )	qovun	дыня
oriental ( <i>adj</i> )	sharqona	восточный
ritual ( <i>n</i> )	marosim	ритуал

rose petal ( <i>word combination</i> )	atirgul gulbarglari	лепесток розы
seeds ( <i>n</i> )	urug‘	семена
sesame ( <i>n</i> )	kunjut	кунжут
sprinkled ( <i>adj</i> )	sochilgan, sepilgan	посыпанный
solemn ( <i>adj</i> )	tantanali ravishda	торжественный
tasty ( <i>adj</i> )	mazali	вкусный
water-melon ( <i>n</i> )	tarvuz	арбуз
wheat ( <i>n</i> )	bug‘doy	пшеница

## ***Legend of Sumalak***



*Long ago there was a woman who had two sons. Their names were Hasan and Husan. Because she was a widow and very poor, they had very little to eat, and her sons always cried from hunger. One day, their mother became very weary of their crying, and sorrowful that she had no food to give them.*

*That evening, after they had gone to bed, she asked her neighbor for some wheat, and then took a pot from the cupboard into which she placed 7 stones, poured water over the stones and stirred in the flour. Her sons heard the commotion, and thought their mother was cooking something delicious to eat. Reassured that they would soon have a good meal, they became quiet, closed their eyes and fell asleep. A little later their mother also slept. When she awoke in the early hours of the morning, she saw 30 angels standing around the pot. She rubbed her eyes, and when she opened them again, she saw them licking their fingers.*



*In her delight, she woke up her sons. In their excitement they ran to the pot and found it filled with a most succulent porridge. From that time forth the boys were never hungry. The name of the meal was called “Sumalak” which, the Uzbek people say, means 30 angels.*

[https://orexca.com/legends\\_sumalak.shtml](https://orexca.com/legends_sumalak.shtml)

## ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

angel ( <i>n</i> )	farishta	ангел
around ( <i>adv</i> )	atrofida	вокруг
commotion	behuda, hovliqma	суета
delicious ( <i>v</i> )	mazali	очень вкусный
delight ( <i>n</i> )	quvonch	радость
fall asleep ( <i>word combination</i> )	uxlab qolmoq	заснуть
forth ( <i>adv</i> )	oldinga	вперед, дальше
hunger ( <i>n</i> )	ochlik	голод
neighbor ( <i>n</i> )	qo‘shni	сосед
pot ( <i>n</i> )	qozon	казан
porridge ( <i>n</i> )	bo‘tqa	каша
rub ( <i>v</i> )	ishqalamoq, uqalamoq	тереть
stir ( <i>v</i> )	aralash-tirmoq, qorishtirmoq	размешивать
succulent ( <i>adj</i> )	suyuq	сочный
reassured ( <i>adj</i> )	tasdiqlangan	успокоившись

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 How many types of dishes are there in Uzbek cuisine?
- 2 What kind of dish is The Uzbek palav?
- 3 What do the Uzbek believe about palav?

- 4 Why is the bread considered holy for the Uzbeks?
- 5 What traditions are there related with bread?
- 6 Why is soup special for Uzbek cuisine?
- 7 What ingredients is halva prepared of?
- 8 Why does the tradition of bringing halva to fiancée's home mean?
- 9 How are the fruits used in Uzbekistan?
- 10 What is special about Uzbek dishes?

➤ *Fill in the suitable word from the box*

<b>species</b>	<b>fragrant</b>	<b>particular</b>	<b>delicious</b>	<b>recipe</b>
<b>add</b>	<b>Various</b>	<b>fiancée</b>	<b>almonds</b>	<b>refer</b>

- 1 In order to make this dish tasty you should \_\_\_\_\_ a little salt.
- 2 Oh! It is \_\_\_\_\_. Just have a look and try.
- 3 This matter is very important. Every detail should be discussed in \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 There are \_\_\_\_\_ traditions in the world.
- 5 I especially like the moment when the groom wears a wedding ring on the fingers of his \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 There are various \_\_\_\_\_ in flora and fauna of Uzbekistan.
- 7 The \_\_\_\_\_ of this perfume smells wonderfully.
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ is very useful for health. Its oil is even used for cosmetic purposes.
- 9 The \_\_\_\_\_ of this dish is very special and consists of some

rituals.

**10** If you have any problems, you can \_\_\_\_\_ to me.

- *Read the dialogue between Tom and Dilora. Find the sentences where the action is happening right now and write out the ingredient words*

### **In the kitchen**

*Tom:* Hi, Dilora! What are you doing?

*Dilora:* I'm cooking palov.

*Tom:* Palov? What kind of meal is it?

*Dilora:* It's national – the most popular meal of the Uzbek cuisine.

*Tom:* Oh! It smells delicious!

*Dilora:* Yes, delicious and useful for health. Just have a look, all vitamins are in this pot.

*Tom:* You are right! Meat, onion, carrot, garlic, spices – all is in one pot!

*Dilora:* You can also add dried grapes and quince if you like.

*Tom:* But, they are fruits! You are frying fruits and vegetables!

*Dilora:* It's up to you. If you don't like these fruits it's not necessary to add them. But, they give a specific taste to rice.

*Tom:* So, the next is rice!

*Dilora:* Right. Then, you add a little water on the rice and boil it until the rice adsorbs the water.

*Tom:* Is that all?

*Dilora:* No, the most interesting is just starting! As soon as there is no water, you gather the rice in a pile and then make holes.

*Tom:* How many holes?

*Dilora:* 6 or 7 is enough.

*Tom:* You are making holes now. Is it already ready?



*Dilora:* Not yet. Now, I'm putting the lid and decreasing the heat. And after 25 or 30 minutes it's ready!

*Tom:* Fine!

## ***Legend of palov***

*How old is palov? The first references to a dish of rice and meat date back to the 10th and 11th centuries. Chronicles mention that palov was served as the main dish at weddings and important holidays. At that time it was only the rich that could afford it, for others it was an option only on feast days, or not at all. From then on palov was valued not only as delicious holiday fare, but also for its healing properties: it helped restore strength and resolve after heavy labor or battle.*

*A legend tells how the name "Palov osh", or plov, came about. Once upon a time the ruler of Bukhara's son fell in love with the daughter of a poor craftsman. Sadly, local laws prohibited such a marriage. The Prince lost his sleep and appetite, but no one around him could understand what was happening. After a while the boy became so exhausted that his relatives took him to Avicenna, but the Prince would not divulge his worries because he thought there could be no cure. Avicenna decided to identify the reason for the patient's anxiety by his pulse. He called a person who knew Bukhara and its people well, and asked him to start naming all the city districts one after another. When one district was announced, the Prince's pulse went up. The great physician noticed this and asked him to start naming the dwellers of that district. As soon as the girl's name was pronounced, the boy's pulse rose so high that there could be no more doubt. Avicenna prescribed treatment: the Prince should eat "palov osh" at least weekly until his strength is fully recovered, and then marry his love. Perhaps this is the reason why plov is a must at wedding feasts.*

*So the name "palov, osh" is in fact an acronym for its components: p-piyoz (onion), a-ayoz (carrot), l-lakhm (meat), o-olio (fat), v-vet (salt), o-ob (water), sh-sholi (rice). This is not just a beautiful legend. Plovis indeed made of these ingredients. In time recipes have changed and been refined, and more ingredients added: raisins, peas, pepper, barberry, quince, garlic, apricots and many other products and spices. Plov is usually served on big ceramic or porcelain plates. Pieces of meat are placed on top of the rice, as are garlic or quince, if used. Centuries ago it was served to each person separately on flat round breads, and to this day many people eat it with their hands, like their ancestors. Plov is always accompanied by salads made of fresh or marinated vegetables - tomatoes, cucumbers, radish, and fruits and herbs such as pomegranate, dill or basil. Salads not only*

*provide vitamins, but are essential to aid digestion of the plov, which is usually quite heavy. Green tea is also a must.*

<http://www.tourstouzbekistan.com/en/blog/stories-and-legends>

### **ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:**

accompany ( <i>v</i> )	kuzatib qo‘yimoq	сопровождать
ancestors ( <i>n</i> )	ajdodlar	предки
anxiety ( <i>n</i> )	hayajon	беспокойство
barberry ( <i>n</i> )	zirk	барбарис
basil ( <i>n</i> )	rayhon	базилик
dill ( <i>n</i> )	shivit	укроп
digestion ( <i>n</i> )	hazm qilish, o‘zlashtirish	пищеварение, усвоение
doubt ( <i>v</i> )	shubha, gumon	сомнение
essential ( <i>adj</i> )	muhim	важный
garlic ( <i>n</i> )	sarimsoq	чеснок
heavy ( <i>adj</i> )	og‘ir	тяжелый
herb ( <i>n</i> )	o‘t-o‘lan, ko‘kat	трава, зелень
ingredient ( <i>n</i> )	ingrediyent, masalliq	ингредиент
notice ( <i>n, v</i> )	farq qildi	примечание, замечать
pomegranate ( <i>n</i> )	anor	гранат
prohibit ( <i>v</i> )	taqiqlamoq	запрещать
provide ( <i>v</i> )	taqdim etmoq	предоставлять
quince ( <i>n</i> )	behi	айва

reference ( <i>n</i> )	manba	ИСТОЧНИК
wedding ( <i>n</i> )	to‘y	свадьба

## The Traditional Uzbek crafts

The applied arts of Uzbekistan is a real cultural and historical phenomenon. It is well known because of the Uzbek traditions. The beautiful architectural ensembles of Bukhara, Samarkand, Khiva, Tashkent and Ferghana are famous for their pieces of applied arts. Beautiful pieces are created by masters in wood-carving, chasing, lacquered miniatures, embroidery and jewelry plus all the art of Uzbekistan.



The development of *national painting* began many centuries ago. At 16-17 centuries art of the manuscript and binding in Bukhara and some other urban centers has achieved significant success. The decorating of manuscript included refined calligraphy, performance by water paints and thin ornaments on fields. In Samarkand and especially in Bukhara the Central Asian school of a miniature has achieved a great success and were developed many different style directions. One of them, for example is connected with traditions of Behzod, which characterized with its gentle style of writing the letter and architectural elements.



Applied art of Uzbeks has a wealth of variety when it comes to style, materials and ornamentation. Silk, ceramics and cotton weaving, stone and wood carving, metal engraving, leather stamping, calligraphy and miniature painting are some genres passed down from ancient times. Back in the past, each region had its own cultural and ethnic traditions the unique



features of which were established by local guilds that have strengthened these characteristics through their art.

Uzbek craftsmen nowadays still practice ancient jewelry making techniques for cutting gemstones, grain filigree, granular work, engraving and enameling, also they are trying to take into account fashion demands, styles.



Embroidery is one of the most popular trends of applied arts in Uzbekistan. Every city of Uzbekistan has its own unique features such as ornamentation, composition, colour range and stitching.

The finest kind of embroidery, gold embroidery is still practiced in Bukhara. Golden embroidery is not only decoration of gowns, clothes, national caps – “duppi”, jacket, but also shoes. It is very popular to have golden embroidery in the dowry of a future bride.



The art of carpet weaving is also a very ancient form of art throughout Asia and the East, and nowadays it can be found in some of the cities of Uzbekistan today.



The art of wood carving is used and adapted in modern interior design. Carved and painted tables, stools, caskets, pencil boxes and bookstands are popular pieces of furniture among local people and tourists. All of them show all the beauty and wealth of traditional floral and geometric ornament. Carvers used wood of such trees as elm, walnut, sycamore, juniper, mulberry. Khiva, Bukhara, Samarkand, Tashkent and Fergana were and are the renowned centers of woodcarving. Each school is distinguished with its own approach of carving and patterns of ornament. Uzbekistan wood carving art is still developing and presents on many traditional wood articles.

Uzbek clothes are often made of cotton and women's clothes in particular feature a blending of colorful stripes and patterns and are made with shiny silk and cotton (cloth hand woven into simple patterns). Uzbek national clothes are very bright, beautiful and cozy. Uzbek clothes are a part of rich cultural traditions and life style of Uzbek people. In urban places it is uncommon to see people in traditional Uzbek clothes, except during traditional festivities and holidays. But in rural places they are still a part of everyday life. The cloth is called "atlas", "khan-atlas", or "adras". Both men and women wear headgear – "duppi", which is classified by men', women', children's, and for old people's. Different regions wear different headgear.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

art ( <i>n</i> )	san'at	искусство
classify ( <i>v</i> )	tasniflash	группировать
distinguish ( <i>v</i> )	ajratib turmoq	различать
feature ( <i>n</i> )	xususiyat	особенность, черта
headgear ( <i>n</i> )	bosh kiyim	головной убор
ornament ( <i>n</i> )	ornament, bezak	орнамент, украшение
pattern ( <i>n</i> )	namuna	образец
piece ( <i>n</i> )	tom, qism	часть
traditional ( <i>adj</i> )	an'anaviy	традиционный
woodcarving ( <i>n</i> )	yog'och o'yumakorligi	резьба по дереву

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 What types of traditional craft are mentioned in the text?
- 2 What sorts of applied arts have been developed in Uzbekistan?
- 3 When did the national painting start to develop in Uzbekistan?
- 4 What does the decoration of manuscripts include?
- 5 What materials are used for decoration and ornamentation?
- 6 How do craftsmen practice ancient jewelry?
- 7 We know, there are various types of embroidery for each region. What types of embroidery do you know?
- 8 Which of the crafts have all the beauty and wealth of traditional floral and geometric ornament?
- 9 What kind of trees do the carvers use for their craft?
- 10 What kind of fiber are the Uzbek clothes usually made of?

➤ *Fill in the suitable word from the box*

<b>embroidery</b>	<b>blend</b>	<b>distinguish</b>	<b>rural</b>	<b>uncommon</b>
<b>furniture</b>	<b>performance</b>	<b>urban</b>	<b>except</b>	<b>carpet</b>

- 1 In \_\_\_\_\_ areas, people tend to be in no hurry and more relaxed.
- 2 It is \_\_\_\_\_ to wear this dress in our country.
- 3 Everybody came to the party \_\_\_\_\_ you.

- 4 There is a lot of built in \_\_\_\_\_in my house.
- 5 The \_\_\_\_\_was marvelous! I especially liked the play of Murod Rajabov!
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_people are usually in a rush and spent less time at home with their relatives.
- 7 Some teacher \_\_\_\_\_different methods to make their lessons more effective.
- 8 The \_\_\_\_\_on the floor is made on ancient ornament.
- 9 The meaning of these words are so close that it is difficult to \_\_\_\_\_them.
- 10 One of the national craft of Uzbek people –\_\_\_\_\_, is wide spread across Uzbekistan.

### *A legend of khan-atlas<sup>4</sup>*



*A legend of khan-atlas says: "In ancient times, one of the rulers of Margilan decided to marry for the fifth time. His choice fell on the young daughter of a poor weaver. Being annoyed, the girl's father fell on his knees before the old khan, asking him to withdraw from the girl. The khan replied that he would fulfill the request of a poor man, if the next morning he created something extraordinary that would make the Khan forget about the beauty of the girl. The sad weaver sat on the bank of the channel, not knowing what to do next. And suddenly he saw the reflection of clouds in the water, which were painted with a rainbow of colors after the last rain. "Oh, heavens, thank you for the idea!" - He cried and ran home to get to work immediately.*

*The next morning he wove an unusual cloth: light and airy as a cloud, cool like a pure mountain air and as iridescent as a rainbow. When the master brought this extraordinary fabric*



<sup>4</sup> Khan-atlas - traditional Uzbek pattern of silk or cotton fabric with crossed narrow and wide colored stripes

to the khan, he was shocked with its enchanting beauty, "How did you do that?" - He asked the weaver. And the weaver said: "I took green rain-washed leaves, added colors of tulip petals, the blush of dawn, blue night sky, patches of sunlight on the water and bright eyes of my beloved daughter and mixed everything up." The unusual fabric was called Khan-Atlas ("Khan silk"), and the khan married the weaver's daughter to his beloved son.

<https://www.advantour.com/uzbekistan/legends/khan-atlas.htm>

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

beloved ( <i>adj</i> )	sevimli	милый
blush ( <i>v</i> )	qizarmoq	краснеть
beauty ( <i>n</i> )	go‘zallik	красота
fabric ( <i>n</i> )	mato	ткань
leave ( <i>v</i> )	qoldirmoq	оставлять, покидать
tulip ( <i>n</i> )	lola	тюльпан
patch ( <i>n</i> )	bir bo‘lak mato	лоток, обрывок
petal( <i>n</i> )	gultojbarg	лепесток
unusual ( <i>adj</i> )	kutilmagan	необычный
weaver ( <i>n</i> )	to‘quvchi, chevar	ткач

### LEARNING WITH MODERN PEDAGOGICAL TECHNOLOGIES

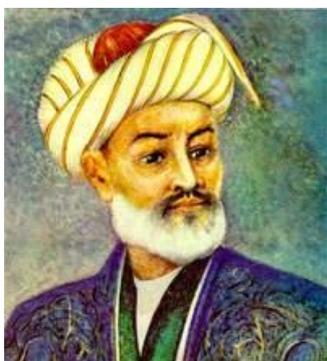
#### **TWO-PART DIARY**

- Fill in the table **TWO-PART DIARY** on the topic below giving your “pro” and “cons” ideas



# *Famous Uzbek People*

## **Alisher Navoiy**



Alisher Navoi was born in Herat, on the 9th of February 1441. His father, Guiyasiddin Kichkine, was a prominent man and civil servant, and his grandmother was a wet-nurse for Timurid's children. Adolescent Alisher was brought up together with offsprings of Amir Timur's family. At the age of 4 he was sent to school.

After the death of the governor Shahruh in Herat a power feud rose and most people were forced to leave Herat.

The family of Guiyasiddin Kichkine moved to Iraq and set up in Taft town, but in 1452, when Abul-Kasym Bobur had been confirmed for the position of the governor, they returned to Herat.

Guiyasiddin Kichkine served at the court of Babur. After a time he was named chief of city administration in Sabzavar. Alisher stays in Herat and continues his study.

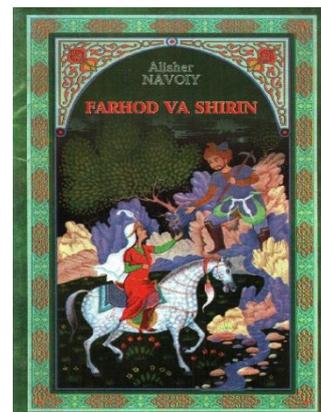
At the age of 15 together with Sultan Husayn Boyqaro he started to serve at Bobur's court. In 1456 Abul-Kasim Bobur moved to Meshhed city and Navoi and Husain Baikara followed him.

Soon after internecine feuds and animosities decreased, Navoi returned to Herat. Then Navoi went to one of the great cultural centers of the country – Samarkand and studied at madrasah found by Fayzullah Abu-l-Leysa – an outstanding jurisprudent and Arab language expert.

In 1469 Abu-Said had died in a battle and the throne was taken by Husayn Boyqaro. At the invitation of the school friend that became the ruler of Khorasan city Navoi moves from Herat to Samarkand in the same year.

Navoi died on the 3rd of January in 1501. Herat city mourned the poet's death.

According to the capacity of Alisher Navoi's work is more than 60000 verses. His "Hamsa" includes the following dostons (plays): "Hayratu-l-abror", "Farhod va Shirin", "Layli va Majnun", "Sab'ai sayyor", "Saddi Iskandariy". Navoi was the first poet who created completed "Hamsa" in turkiy language (the old Uzbek language) and proved that such great work could be written in Turkiy.



His name is equal in a one line with the names of Gomer and Dante, Rudaki and Firdousi, Nizami and Rustavelli, Saadi and Jami, Shakespeare and Balzac, Pushkin and Tolstoy.

He devoted all his activity and a deep humanistic creation to serving in the sake of people, flourishing of the science, art and literature. He was a wise counselor and mentor who taught a whole pleiad personalities of culture dated XV-XVI centuries.

Zahiriddin Babur remembered as: "Alisher Navoi was a man to whom anybody wasn't equal. He marvelously wrote so many poems in Turkic that anybody hadn't written such amount until him". Other contemporary of the poets also give a high mark to Navoi's creation.

As a sign of acknowledgement to genius, the most of the streets were called by his name in Alma-Ata, Baku, Ashkhabad, Kiev and, etc. A monument is set to a famous poet in the cities such as Moscow, Tokyo, Baku, Osh, bas-relief – Mazār-e Sharīf in Afghanistan. The crater in Mercury is also named after Navoi.

## ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

counselor ( <i>n</i> )	maslahatchi	советчик
equal ( <i>adj</i> )	teng	равный
expert ( <i>n</i> )	mutaxassis	эксперт, специалист
genius ( <i>n</i> )	daho	гений
poem ( <i>n</i> )	she'r	стих
poet ( <i>n</i> )	shoir	поэт
street ( <i>n</i> )	ko'cha	улица
sign ( <i>n</i> )	belgi	признак

### Abdulla Kodiriy



Abdulla Kodiriy was born on April 10, 1894. in Tashkent, an Uzbek and playwright, poet, writer, and literary translator. His father, Qodirbobo, was 74 years old when Qodiriy was born. Qodiriy did a variety of menial jobs before a merchant hired him as a book copier. He became interested in writing in the middle of the 1910s. Qodiriy was one of the most influential Uzbek writers of the 20th century. He introduced realism into Uzbek literature through his historical novels and influenced many other Central Asian novelists. Qodiriy's most famous works are the historical novels *O'tgan kunlar* (*Days Gone By*) (1922) and *Mehrobdan chayon* (*Scorpion in the Pulpit*) (1929). *O'tgan kunlar* is the first full-length novel by an Uzbek author. Qodiriy's stories *Kalvak Mahzumning xotira daftaridan* (*From Mahzum the Simpleton's Diary*) and *Toshpo'lat tajang nima deydir?* (*What Does Irritated Toshpo'lat Say?*) are considered to be one of the best satirical stories in Uzbek.

*O'tgan kunlar* novel was serialized in the magazine *Inqilob* from 1922–1925. Uzbekfilm released the film of the same name in 1969. The film stars O'lmas Alixo'jayev and Gulchehra Jamilova were in the main roles as the lovers Otabek and Kumush, with Abbas Bakirov, Pirmuhamedov Rahim Nabi Rakhimov, Habib Narimanov, Hamza Umarov Javlon Khamraev, Razzaq Khamraev, Maryam Yakubov and Gulchehra Zufarov.



The film is set in Tashkent, around the beginning of the 19th century, and tells the story of the lives of the upper class society of the period. The film follows the story of lovers Otabek and Kumush against the background of civil strife between the rulers and people.

Qodiriy also wrote many plays and numerous newspaper articles. He was fluent in Arabic, Persian, and Russian. Qodiriy translated into the Uzbek language the works of many famous Russian writers such as Nikolai Gogol and Anton Chekhov. In particular, he translated Gogol's *Marriage* (1842) into Uzbek.

Qodiriy wrote under various pen names, the most renowned being Julqunboy. The Jadid movement influenced his early works.

Qodiriy was briefly arrested in 1926 for his article "Yig'indi gaplar" ("A Collection of Rumors") that was published in *Mushtum*. He was arrested again on December 31, 1937, as "enemy of the people". Qodiriy was executed during the Great Purge under the leadership of Joseph Stalin on October 4, 1938, in Tashkent.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

again ( <i>adv</i> )	yana, qaytadan	опять
civil ( <i>adj</i> )	fuqarolik	гражданский

influential ( <i>adj</i> )	obro'li	почтенный, влиятельный
novel ( <i>n</i> )	roman	роман
various ( <i>adj</i> )	turli	разный
satirist ( <i>n</i> )	satirik	сатирик
society ( <i>n</i> )	jamiyat	общество
role ( <i>n</i> )	rol	роль

## Ulugbek

He was Timur's grandson and he ruled the country for 40 years. In 1424



he built a medrese. In 1428 he began the construction of a three-level observatory in Samarkand. He was a great astronomer and mathematician who calculated the length of the year as 365 days, 5 hours, 49 minutes, 15 seconds. In 1437 he finished a star catalogue giving the positions of 1,018 stars.

The teenaged ruler set out to turn the city into an intellectual center for the empire. Between 1417 and 1420, he built a *madrasa* ("university" or "institute") on Registan Square in Samarkand (currently in Uzbekistan), and he invited numerous Islamic astronomers and mathematicians to study there. The *madrasa* building still survives. Ulugh Beg's most famous pupil in astronomy was Ali Qushchi (died in 1474).

He was also famous in the fields of medicine and poetry. He used to debate with other poets about contemporary social issues. He liked to debate in a poetic style, called "Bahribayt" among local poets. According to the medical book



"Mashkovskiy" which is in the Russian language, Ulughbek discovered the

mixture of alcohol with garlic, apparently preserving it to help treat conditions like diarrhea, headache, stomach ache and intestine illnesses.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

alcohol ( <i>n</i> )	alkogol	АЛКОГОЛ
calculate ( <i>v</i> )	hisoblamoq	ВЫЧИСЛЯТЬ, СЧИТАТЬ
construction ( <i>n</i> )	bino	ЗДАНИЕ
illness ( <i>n</i> )	kasallanish	ЗАБОЛЕВАНИЕ
intestine ( <i>n, adj</i> )	ichak, oshqozon-ichak	КИШКА, КИШЕЧНЫЙ
issue ( <i>n</i> )	muammo	ПРОБЛЕМА, ЗАДАЧА
length ( <i>n</i> )	uzunlik	ДЛИНА
preserve ( <i>v</i> )	himoya qilish	ОБЕРЕГАТЬ
stomach ( <i>n</i> )	oshqozon	ЖЕЛУДОК
square ( <i>adj</i> )	kvadrat	КВАДРАТ

## Babur



The name of Zahiriddin Muhammad Babur in the history of Uzbekistan is on a parallel with such political figures and military leaders as Jaloliddin Manguberdi, Amir Timur, Ulugbek, Alisher Navoi. A direct descendant of Timur, Babur created an empire of Baburids in India (in the western sources it is known as Mughal Empire) and was a loyal son of his country and the rest of his life he was fighting for its welfare and prosperity.

Babur was the son of the Timurid prince Umarsheykh, the ruler of the Fergana region. He was born in 1483. At the age of 12 years, resulting in the tragic

death of his father, he became the new ruler and started a brutal struggle for power in Mawarannahr. During 1494-1496, while still a teenager, Babur participated in the battles of Samarkand, where he first met on the battlefield with his most powerful enemy, Sheybani Khan, who had an enormous impact on the fate of Babur.

Most of his life Babur spent in military campaigns and battles. He tried unsuccessfully to unite the separated regions of Mawarannahr and create a new great state of Temurids. His dream was realized in India, where he went with his troops in 1526. Babur succeeded in laying the basis for the Great Mughal Dynasty in India, which had existed for about 300 years. His ideas preached the establishment of harmony among the peoples and spread of education among the general population. Along with his military and political activities Babur was a great poet, whose rubais (lyric quatrains) delight and inspire many people even today. He wrote one of the most famous oriental works in world literature: "Baburnama".

"Baburnama" is personal letters of Babur, which he has kept throughout life and collected in one work. "Baburnama" is not only a description of the personal life of the author, but also a valuable source for studying the history, culture and life of the peoples, flora and fauna of various areas visited by Babur.

Babur was one of the greatest men of his time. Creating one of the most powerful empires in the history of the East, he, nevertheless, remained an ardent patriot of his country at heart and the rest of his life tried to establish diplomatic and friendly ties with his native city of Andijan.

Today Andijan people proudly pronounce the name of Zahiriddin Muhammad Babur and honor his memory. The town has a monument to Babur, as well as the House of Babur, which has been preserved to our time.

## ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

a brutal struggle ( <i>w.comb</i> )	shafqatsiz kurash	жестокая борьба
descendant ( <i>n</i> )	avlod	потомок
description ( <i>n</i> )	tushuntirmoq, tasvirlamoq	описание
enormous ( <i>adj</i> )	ulkan	огромный
inspire ( <i>v</i> )	ilhom bering	внушать
military campaigns ( <i>w.comb</i> )	harbiy kampaniyalar	военные кампании
preach ( <i>v</i> )	voizlik qilmoq	читать наставления
valuable ( <i>n</i> )	qiymatli	ценный
patriot ( <i>n</i> )	patriot, vatanparvar	патриот

### *Taj Mahal*

*Jahangir's son, Shah Jahan, marks the apex of Mughal garden architecture and floral design. He is famous for the construction of the Taj Mahal, a funereal paradise in memory of his favorite wife, Mumtaz Mahal. He is also responsible for the Red Fort at Delhi, which contains the Mahtab Bagh, a night garden that was filled with night-blooming jasmine and other pale flowers.<sup>[10]</sup> The pavilions within are faced with white marble to glow in the moonlight. This and the marble of the Taj Mahal are inlaid with semiprecious stone depicting scrolling naturalistic floral motifs, the most important being the tulip, which Shah Jahan adopted as a personal symbol.*



## ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

depict (v)	chizmoq, tasvirlamoq	описывать
fill (v)	to‘ldirmoq	наполнять
funerel (n)	dafn marosimi	похороны
floral motifs (w.comb)	gul naqshlari	цветочные мотивы
pale (adj)	rangsiz, rangi-quti o‘chgan	бледный
marble (n)	marmar	мрамор

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 Which of the famous Uzbek people are mentioned in the above texts?
- 2 What have you found out about the early years of Alisher Navoi?
- 3 Which works of Navoi are the most popular?
- 4 What is Navoi’s contribution to science and literature?
- 5 When and where was Abdulla Qodiriy born?
- 6 How did Abdulla Qodiriy introduce realism to uzbek literature?
- 7 What can you tell about the best works of Abdulla Qodiriy?
- 8 In what fields of science was Ulugbek engaged?
- 9 What is Ulugbek’s famous book in astronomy and what does it describe?
- 10 What have you found out about the early years of Zahiriddin Muhammad Babur?
- 11 What is Babur’s contribution to science and literature?

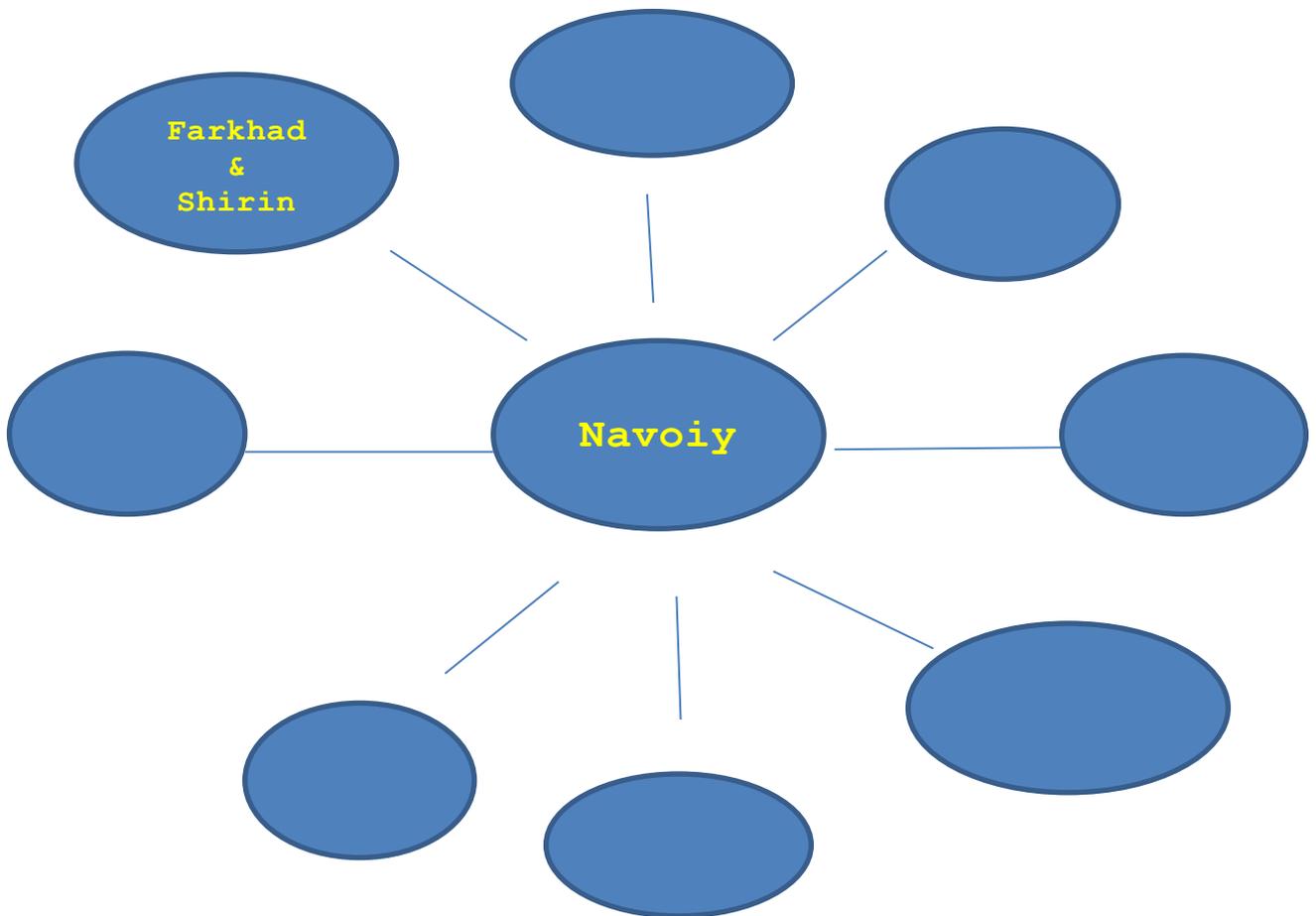
➤ Match the sentences to the names of the above four notable people of Uzbekistan

1	Most of his life he spent in military campaigns and battles.	<i>Babur</i>
2	As a teenager, he ruled the country and turned the city into an intellectual center for the empire.	
3	He introduced realism into Uzbek literature through his historical novels and influenced many other Central Asian novelists.	
4	Being adolescent, he was brought up together with offspring of Amir Timur's family.	
5	Along with his military and political activities he was a great poet, whose rubais (lyric quatrains) delight and inspire many people even today.	
6	He was Timur's grandson.	
7	He was fluent in Arabic, Persian, and Russian.	
8	The capacity of his work is more than 60000 verses.	
9	He devoted all his activity and a deep humanistic creation to serving in the sake of people, flourishing of the science, art and literature.	
10	His book is not only a description of the personal life of the author, but also a valuable source for studying the history, culture and life of the peoples, flora and fauna of various areas visited by him	

## LEARNING WITH MODERN PEDAGOGICAL TECHNOLOGIES

### **BRAINSTORMING**

- *The students are divided into four groups and each group thinks of as many of that person's works as possible*



### **FIVE MINUTE ESSAY**

*Each member of the group should tell briefly about the gist of each work, then the group should choose one of the novels and give as a task to the next group to write five minute essay*

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

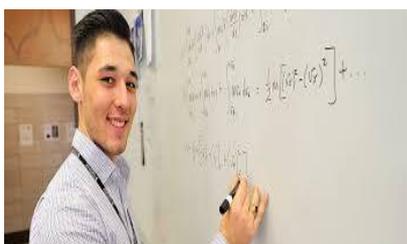
---

# *Science, education, sport*

*Uzbekistan is a country in whose territory development of science and culture has begun since ancient times. In particular, there were widely developed such science as astronomy, mathematics, medicine, chemistry, history, philosophy, linguistics, literature, and crafts - art of sculpture, weaving, pottery, glass making, etc. At present, scientists of Uzbekistan's are actively exploring scientific heritage left by ancient scholars, enrich science with their new discoveries, making a significant contribution to world science.*

*Between the 9th and 10th century, Central Asia became one of the largest scientific and cultural centers of the East, where first scientific research institutions were established as well as institutions and scientific communities in the similitude of modern academies.*

## **Science in Uzbekistan**



Today Uzbekistan is a large scientific center in Central Asia. Almost 300 scientific institutions function in the country. There are a well-developed research basis and a wide scientific fund with over 25,000 skilled scientists and researchers. The scientists of the republic carry out fundamental research in the important trends of modern science contributing greatly in such branches like microelectronics, astronomy, geology, biophysics, genetics.

The accomplishments of Uzbek scientists in development of theory of hydrometeorology and the study of superconductors, medicine and agriculture are well known. During the transition period, the share of public funds allocated for the development of science make up 0.5 - 0.6% of the budget. Over 3.5 billion sums are allocated annually for research programs carried out by the State Committee on Science and Engineering. Stemming from the issues of Uzbekistan's development, the priority trends in scientific research include the utilization of genetic engineering in the production of new kinds of

silkworm cocoons; the development of solar thermal systems; and the development of water-saving irrigation and water conservation technologies.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

accomplishment ( <i>n</i> )	amalga oshmoq	осуществление
branch ( <i>n</i> )	filial	филиал
carry out	bajarmoq, amalga oshirmoq	выполнять, осуществлять
theory ( <i>n</i> )	qarash, nazariya	теория
research ( <i>n, v</i> )	o'rganmoq	наука, исследовать
share ( <i>n, v</i> )	qism	доля, делиться
silkworm ( <i>n</i> )	g'umbak	кокон
superconductor ( <i>n</i> )	superkonduktor	суперкондуктор
thermal systems ( <i>w. comb</i> )	issiqlik tizimi	тепло система
trend ( <i>n</i> )	yo'nalish, tomon, taraf	направление, тенденция

### SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:

➤ Write if the sentences are TRUE (T) or FALSE (F). Give your reasons.

1	Currently Uzbekistan possesses a large scientific center throughout of Central Asia.	
2	There are less than 300 scientific institutions	
3	The base of science consists of great number of skilled scientists and researchers.	

4	The scientists of the republic carry out only in microelectronics, astronomy, geology, biophysics, genetics.	
5	The study of hydrometeorology, superconductors, medicine and agriculture have been highly applied in practice.	
6	The annual budget share for research of Uzbekistan is not very high.	
7	Utilization of genetic engineering in the production of new kinds of silkworm cocoons is not included in the research.	
8	The State Committee on Science and Engineering carries out research programs.	
9	The development of solar thermal systems is one of the prior of scientific trends in Uzbekistan.	
10	The development of water-saving irrigation and water conservation technologies is not as well developed as other research branches.	

## Education of Uzbekistan

Two national authorities, the Ministry of People's Education (for primary, secondary, and vocational education) and the Ministry of Higher Education (postsecondary education), control education.



From 1991 the system of education has been reconstructed according to the requirements of independent state meeting the needs of the new era. This process was carried out step-by-step in correlation with the types and forms of education—pre-school education, secondary school education, secondary specialized, professional (vocational) education, higher education. Girls and boys are legally

considered equal and study in the same classes and schools. Schools are open to all ethnic groups, and minorities in schools are rarely an issue.

When viewed in general, the Uzbekistan educational system includes:

- Preschool training (preprimary-from three to six years old)
- General secondary education (from 6 to 15 years old)
- Secondary vocational education (from 15 to 18 years old)
- Higher education (undergraduate and graduate-from 18 years old).

On the initiative and active participation of the first President of the Republic of Uzbekistan Islam Karimov the “National Programme for Specialist Training” was developed and adopted by the Oliy Majlis (Parliament) in 1997.

Main purpose of this Programme is to train spiritually rich and morally mature, possessing up-to-date knowledge and taking active civil position, independently thinking specialists, capable of taking decision deliberately, or, in other words, upbringing harmoniously developed generation, capable of providing the progress and prosperity of Motherland in the new historical era.

Implementation of National programme is carried out in three phases. Structural reconstruction of the system of education, reorganization of existing educational institutions into principally new ones (academic lyceum and vocational colleges) were carried out during the first phase (1997-2001). As a result, nowadays 63 higher educational institutions and about 1100 vocational colleges and academic lyceum are functioning in Uzbekistan. 1 million 220 thousand young people are studying in these educational institutions.

### **ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:**

author ( <i>n</i> )	muallif	автор
carrier ( <i>n</i> )	tashuvchi	карьера
capable ( <i>adj</i> )	qobiliyatli	способный
decision ( <i>n</i> )	qaror	решение, указ

deliberate ( <i>v</i> )	maslahatlashmoq	обдумать, взвешивать
equal ( <i>adj</i> )	teng	равный
era ( <i>n</i> )	era	эра
provide ( <i>v</i> )	bermoq	снабжать
progress ( <i>n</i> )	siljish	прогресс

### **SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:**

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 What are the education authorities in Uzbekistan?
- 2 Why has the system of education been reconstructed?
- 3 What are the stages of Uzbekistan education.
- 4 Who has the right to get education in Uzbekistan?
- 5 What law on education was adopted by Oliy Majlis?
- 6 What is the main purpose of “National Program for Specialist Training”?
- 7 How many phases are there in the implementation of National Program?
- 8 What are the tasks of the first phase?
- 9 What periods does the program comprise for realization of the first phase?
- 10 What periods does the program comprise for realization of the second and third phases?

*Fill in the suitable word from the box*

<b>authority</b>	<b>initiative</b>	<b>vocational</b>	<b>equal</b>	<b>matured</b>
<b>implementation</b>	<b>legal</b>	<b>take decision</b>	<b>upbringing</b>	<b>participation</b>

- 1 The \_\_\_\_\_ of this task should be due on time.
- 2 On the \_\_\_\_\_ of the president, a lot reforms and changes have been developed recently.
- 3 All citizens of Uzbekistan, in spite of gender and nationality have \_\_\_\_\_ rights to get education.
- 4 The word \_\_\_\_\_ means as a “professional”.
- 5 It is not \_\_\_\_\_ to steal state property.
- 6 She is too young. She is not \_\_\_\_\_ yet to understand such difficult things.
- 7 You are the person who \_\_\_\_\_ at the end.
- 8 The \_\_\_\_\_ of the university worked out regulations for students.
- 9 As you are the leader in the team, your \_\_\_\_\_ in this meeting is very important.
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ young children spiritually clever and physically strong is the main purpose of our government.

## National University of Uzbekistan



National University of Uzbekistan is the oldest and largest university of Uzbekistan; it has 13 schools. The university was founded in 1918 as Turkestan People's University, with 1,200 students; in 1920 it was reorganized as Turkestan State University, and in July 1923 it was renamed the First Central Asian State University, a name it retained through the end of the 1950s. The name has been changed several times. On 28 of January in 2000 university was claimed as National University of Uzbekistan according to the decree of the President of Uzbekistan Republic.

NUU was first founded not only in Uzbekistan but in whole Central Asia. Scientists and teachers of university greatly contributed to the development of science, education and scientific researches and educational system.

Nowadays there are 13 faculties, 45 spheres of bachelor degree, more than 100 spheres of master`s degree. National University of Uzbekistan is a basic university, which is always leader at creating State Educational Standards for universities, model of study plans and adopting them in other Universities.

1180 professors and teachers are working now, among them 21 academicians, 200 doctors of Sciences and professors, 550 candidates of Ph.D, more than 400 senior teachers and assistant teachers. Staffs scientific intellect is directed to high quality teaching and knowledge, methodology and, scientific research achievements.

## ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

accord ( <i>n</i> )	kelishuv	соглашение
claim ( <i>n, v</i> )	talab, da'vo	востребование, претендовать, потребовать
contribute ( <i>v</i> )	hissa qo'shmoq	делать вклад
decree ( <i>n</i> )	farmon	указ
knowledge ( <i>n</i> )	bilim	знание
method ( <i>n</i> )	usul	метод
retain ( <i>v</i> )	ushlab qolmoq	удерживать
scientific ( <i>adj</i> )	ilmiy	научный

### Navoi State Mining Institute

Another higher institution in Central Asia, specialized in mining profile is Navoi State Mining Institute, a leading university in using a dual system for specialists' training that has been recognized as the world's best teaching technology. It was founded according to the president's decree of Islam Karimov in 1995. Both theory and practice are combined in the training process.



Key specialists of the Navoi Mining and Melting Plant, Qizilqumcement JSC, Navoiazot JSC, Navoi power supply networks, hydropower plant and Elektrokhimia JSC frequently visit and assist to apply theory with practice.

The main aim of this educational establishment is to train skilled specialists. Its graduators are able to be employed in various industrial sectors of

Uzbekistan, particularly for Navoi Mining and Metallurgical Combinat (NMMC), which is the biggest gold and uranium producer in Central Asia.

Graduates of Navoi State Mining Institute, who obtained BS and MS degrees, successfully work in 10 areas of industrial engineering. Among disciplines taught at NSMI there are Metallurgy, Machine-Building Engineering, Chemical Engineering, and Automation and Mining electro mechanics. NSMI has a scientific and educational collaboration with different universities in Russia, Great Britain, Ukraine and Kazakhstan.

The institute's full potential staff and advanced under and post graduate students actively take part in international projects for realizing various projects and innovations. As an example, the Mechatronics laboratory, which was opened due to the one of the international projects in the frame of Erasmus + program has been successfully functioning at the institute, where the students can develop their innovative ideas and have an opportunity to put them into practice.

The Mining Institute faculties are Mining, Chemical-Metallurgical, Energy and Mechanics that are based on one campus.

There are three educational programs of Navoi State Mining Institute.

Bachelor Programs include the specialities of Ore mining, Metallurgy, Machine-Building Engineering, Power Electricity, Chemical Engineering, Automation and control, Mining electro mechanics, Rare and Radioactive Metal Ores Engineering, Mining Engineering

Master programs comprise the fields of Metallurgy, Mining Machinery and Equipment, Automation of Technological Processes and Productions in Branches, Mining Engineering, Enrichment of minerals, Technological Machines and Equipment, Chemical Technology of Inorganic Matters, Rare and radioactive metal ores engineering.

PhD programs involve Underground Mining, Open Pit Mining, Technology of Inorganic Matters, Technology of Organic Matters, Automation and control of Technological Processes and Productions.

## ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

active ( <i>adj</i> )	aktiv, faol	активный
base ( <i>n</i> )	asos	основа
comprise ( <i>v</i> )	qamrab olmoq	охватывать
equipment ( <i>n</i> )	jihaz	оборудование
function ( <i>n</i> )	funksiya	функция
graduate ( <i>n</i> )	bitiruvchi	выпускник
innovate ( <i>v</i> )	yangilik	новость
inorganic ( <i>adj</i> )	anorganik	инорганический

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:

➤ *Decide if the statements are TRUE or FALSE*

1	NUU was founded ar the beginning of the 1900s.	
2	The name of NUU was changed twice.	
3	The current name of NUU was claimed according to the president's decree of Uzbekistan 82 years later since its year od establishment.	
4	NUU was not the only university in Central Asia at that time.	
5	State Educational Standards are developed in NUU.	
6	NSMI is a the only specialized institute in Central Asia.	
7	There is no cooperation between industry specialists and academics of NSMI.	
8	NSMI only trains specialists for Navoi Mining and Metallurgical Combinat.	

9	NSMI's profile enables to be successfully involved in international projects.	
10	There are more than three programs in NSMI that mainly convey engineering fields.	

➤ *Fill in the suitable word from the box*

<b>claim</b>	<b>Design</b>	<b>Discipline</b>	<b>campus</b>	<b>based</b>
<b>practice</b>	<b>Combine</b>	<b>Frame</b>	<b>comprise</b>	<b>enrichment</b>

- 1 The students \_\_\_\_\_ a new model of the robot and now are practicing it at the laboratory.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ makes perfect. (*an English proverb*)
- 3 A number of different international scholarships were obtained by the students of NSMI in the frame of Erasmus+ program.
- 4 Some \_\_\_\_\_ are taught by industrial specialists at this institute.
- 5 Oh, you can't find this tutor here. His department is on different \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 The findings of this student are \_\_\_\_\_ on theory , practice and methodology.
- 7 You can't \_\_\_\_\_ that this is a successful research, until you put it into practice.
- 8 Be careful, these two substances can not be \_\_\_\_\_, they are easily blasted.
- 9 This research work \_\_\_\_\_ introduction, three chapters, summary and literature review.
- 10 The process of minerals \_\_\_\_\_ is quite complex and demands a lot of accuracy, knowledge and practice.

## Sport in Uzbekistan

*For many centuries, Uzbek nation has been famous for its strongest palvans (wrestlers) and legendary equestrians, which contributed to create national types of sports in Uzbekistan, such as Kurash, Belbogli-kurash, Turon, and Boyqurgan. Today, Uzbekistan created a great opportunity for national sports, which are some of cultural inheritance of Uzbekistan in the sphere of physical culture and sports, to present to the world.*

*Each nation has its own national sports: Japan, in the sports world is associated with judo, karate, sumo, China- Wu-shu; Korea – taekwondo and sirim; USA – baseball and basketball. Like the other countries in the world, Uzbekistan is also introducing its inherited sport like kurash, belbogli kurash, turon, and boyqurgan. One of the initial achievements was that Kurash, Belbogli-kurash, Turon, and Boyqurgan received international status and being included to Asian Games.*

## Development of Sport in Uzbekistan

Today Uzbekistan sport has become an integral part of education.

Uzbekistan is considered to be a country with a young population - more than 40 percent of the republic's residents are young people aged up to 18 years. It is important that they have grown fully developed and purposeful individuals in both the spiritual and the physical plan. Therefore, attention to children's sport and healthy lifestyles of young people identified as one of the priorities of the state policy.



In order to provide a full support sport of children and youth, Children's Sports Development Fund has been functioning since 2002 in Uzbekistan, providing comprehensive promotion of all types of sports among children. One thousand 113 thousand modern children's sports facilities, including 252 sports complexes, 861 gyms and 110 swimming pools were recently created in the country. Currently more than 1 million 800 thousand children on a regular basis are engaged in 30 types of sports. Particular importance is paid for attraction an early aged to the sport for girls and boys in rural areas. Besides, in the Republic,

"Umid Nihollari", "Barkamol avlod" and "Universiade". Support a national three tie model that aims to train effective selection and training of elite athletes.

During the years of Independence sports delegation of Uzbekistan took part in several and Asian games. Up to nowadays, at the Olympics, the Uzbek sportsmen won 6 gold, 5 silver, 11 bronze medals, at the Asian became the owners of 54 gold, 76 silver and 93 bronze medals. The results of our Olympians indicate that Uzbekistan sport has been rapidly progressing. For example, Uzbekistan in international Olympiad in Rio de Janeiro received 13 medals (4 gold, 2 silver, and 7 bronze), signifying the nation's most successful achievement in Olympic history. Seven of these medals were won by the Uzbeks in boxing that three of them are golds. The remainder of the nation's overall tally were awarded to the team in weightlifting, wrestling, and judo. Among the medalists were Hasanboy Dusmatov, who became the nation's second boxer in history to claim an Olympic gold since Mahammatkodir Abdullaev topped the podium in 2000, Ruslan Nurudinov, who successfully set a new Olympic clean and jerk record to hand the Uzbeks its first ever weightlifting title, and Sobirov, who wrapped up his judo career by achieving a bronze-medal feat for the third straight time, before retiring from the sport.



Moreover, Uzbekistan periodically becomes a place of carrying out of such prestigious competitions and tournaments, as the Championship of Asia on boxing, the Championship of Asia and Oceania on Taekvondo, the international tournaments on free-style wrestling, weightlifting, and etc.

Special attention is given to the development of Paralympic sports in the Republic. Expansion of its base became a subject of the directed actions for corresponding departments, public structures, Ministry of Social Welfare of Uzbekistan, the Republican Society of invalids, and Regional representation of the International Red Cross.

## ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

attraction ( <i>n</i> )	jalb qilmoq	вовлекать
competition ( <i>n</i> )	musobaqa	соревнование
create ( <i>adj</i> )	yaratmoq	творить
example ( <i>n</i> )	namuna	пример
jerk record ( <i>w.comb</i> )	abjir, ephil	поворотливый (непредвидимый) рекорд
nation ( <i>n</i> )	millat	нация
public structures ( <i>w.comb.</i> )	xalq muassasasi	народное учреждение
prestigious ( <i>adj</i> )	nufuzli	престижный
retire ( <i>adj</i> )	uzoqlashmoq, ketmoq, iste'foga chiqmoq	уходить на пенсию, отставку
success ( <i>n</i> )	omad	удача
title ( <i>n</i> )	maqom	титул, статус
tournament ( <i>n</i> )	musobaqa	турнамент
welfare ( <i>n</i> )	farovonlik	благополучие
weightlifting ( <i>n</i> )	og'ir atletika	тяжелая атлетика
wrap up ( <i>v</i> )	tugatmoq, xulosa	заканчивать, подводить итоги

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 What is the population of youth in Uzbekistan?
- 2 What is the place of sport in our country's policy?
- 3 How long has Children's Sports Development Fund been functioning?
- 4 What kind of sport facilities have been created since Uzbekistan became independent?
- 5 What is three-tier system of sports in the country?
- 6 What can you tell about the achievements of the Uzbek sportsmen in Olimpiadas?
- 7 What sports are noticeable of the nation's overall tally to?
- 8 What sports are becoming periodical place of competitions and international tournaments??
- 9 What are the achievements of Paralympic sports in Uzbekistan?
- 10 What state structures are involved for development of Paralympic sports in Uzbekistan?

➤ *Decide if the statements are TRUE or FALSE*

1	Nowadays, Uzbekistan sport has become one of the most essential part of education.	
2	Uzbekistan's population of young people is less than 40 percent - aged up to 18 years.	
3	Attention to children's sport and healthy lifestyles of young people is the most important of all the priorities of the state policy.	
4	Sports Development Fund supports all types of sports among children.	

5	In rural areas an early age sport boys and girls is hardly paid attention.	
6	A three-tier system of sports in the country: "Umid Nihollari", "Barkamol avlod" and "Universiade". is a national model of effective selection and training of common athletes.	
7	The results of our Olympians indicate that Uzbekistanis becoming progressive year by year and its prestige among the countries where the sport is progressing rapidly is becoming firm.	
8	Seven of these medals won by the Uzbeks in Rio came from gymnastics, including three gold.	
9	Other sports like free-style wrestling, weightlifting, and etc are as well developed as boxing.	
10	Paralympic sports in the Republic are actions only for corresponding departments and public structures.	

## LEARNING WITH MODERN PEDAGOGICAL TECHNOLOGIES

### CONCEPTUAL TABLE

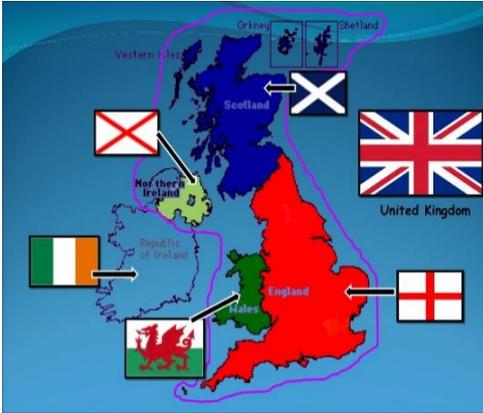
➤ *Fill in the table with achievemnts of Uzbek people in the different spheres*

Education	Science	Sport	Art



## **PART II**

# *The United Kingdom*



*The United Kingdom (UK) is arguably Europe's most influential country. In simple terms, it's the union of the individual countries of England, Scotland and Wales, collectively called Great Britain (Europe's largest island) and the northeastern corner of Ireland - the constitutionally distinct region of Northern Ireland.*

*The United Kingdom is a constitutional monarchy. Its reigning monarch, Queen Elizabeth II, is also the Queen and Head of State of (15) other Commonwealth realms, including Australia, Canada, Jamaica and New Zealand. With deference to the Roman Empire, and 15th and early 16th century Spain, the British Empire was the world's first superpower, with colonies and dependencies stretching around the globe.*

*Throughout the 19th Century, Great Britain was the world's dominant industrial and maritime power. It played a huge role in the development of our modern democracies, and in the advancements of literature, manufacturing, science and the performing arts.*

*Despite the (global) decline of the British Empire, the United Kingdom remains a consequential force; it's the fifth largest economy in the world, second largest in Europe, The genesis of the United Kingdom began in early England. It took centuries of invasions and wars, heroes and villains, kings and queens, and swallowed pride by all concerned before its many parts united as one.*

### **Fact file: United Kingdom**

**Formal name:** The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland

**Capital:** London

**Population:** 60 million

**Government:** Constitutional monarchy (parliamentary monarchy)

**Monarch:** Queen Elizabeth II

**Area:** 243,610 sq. km (94,060 sq. mi)

**Population:** 65,4 million

**State Language:** English (English and Welsh in Wales, English and Scots in Scotland)

**Currency:** British pound (GBP)

## Geographical location and nature of the UK



The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland has several different names. Some people say “Great Britain”, or “Britain”, or “the United Kingdom”, or just “the U.K.” or “G.B.”. Great Britain is an island that lies off the north west of Europe. It is the largest island in Europe. It is 500 km wide and 1000 km long. There is the Atlantic Ocean on the north of it and The North Sea on the east. The English Channel, which is about 21 miles separate the UK from the continent. Its closest continental neighbours are France and Belgium. Recently the Chanel Tunnel that links France and England has been built.

There are four countries in the United Kingdom: England, Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland. England, Scotland and Wales are three main parts of Great Britain.

Scotland is in the North. Edinburgh is its capital. It is one of the most beautiful cities of Great Britain. Wales is in the west. The capital city of Wales is Cardiff. Ireland, which is also an island, lies off the west coast of Great Britain. The capital is Dublin. Besides Northern Ireland, there is the Irish Republic (Eire) on this island. Belfast is the largest city and capital on this island.

Great Britain together with Northern Ireland constitutes the United Kingdom (U.K.). The capital of Great Britain is London, which is in the south-east of England.

The United Kingdom has a temperate climate, with plentiful rainfall all year round. The temperature varies with the seasons seldom dropping below  $-11^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $12^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) or rising above  $35^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $95^{\circ}\text{F}$ ). The prevailing wind is from the south-west and bears frequent spells of mild and wet weather from the Atlantic Ocean, although the eastern parts are mostly sheltered from this wind since the

majority of the rainfalls over the western regions the eastern parts are therefore the driest. Atlantic currents, warmed by the Gulf Stream, bring mild winters; especially in the west where winters are wet and even more so over high ground. Summers are warmest in the south-east of England, being closest to the European mainland, and coolest in the north. Heavy snowfall can occur in winter and early spring on high ground, and occasionally settles to great depth away from the hills.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

current ( <i>n</i> )	oqim, yo‘nalish	поток, течение
dependency ( <i>n</i> )	qaram mamlakat	зависимая страна
frequent ( <i>adj</i> )	tez-tez	частый
heavy ( <i>adj</i> )	og‘ir	тяжелый
majority ( <i>adv</i> )	aksariyat, ko‘pchilik	большинство
neighbor ( <i>n</i> )	qo‘shni	сосед
occasionally ( <i>adv</i> )	ba‘zan, vaqti-vaqti bilan, gohida	редко
occur ( <i>v</i> )	bo‘lib o‘tmoq, yaslanmoq	происходить
plentiful ( <i>adj</i> )	kata miqdorda	в большом количестве
rainfall ( <i>n</i> )	yomg‘ir, jala	дождь, ливень
realm ( <i>n</i> )	qirollik, podsholik	королевство, царство
remain ( <i>v</i> )	qolmoq	оставаться
separate ( <i>v</i> )	chegaralamoq, ajratmoq	отделять
settle ( <i>n, v</i> )	qo‘rg‘on, joylashmoq, o‘rnashmoq	поселок, поселяться

shelte ( <i>n, v</i> )	boshpana, turarjoy topmoq	убежище, приютиться
snowfall ( <i>n</i> )	qor yog‘ishi	снегопад
spell ( <i>n, v</i> )	davr, vaqt, ro‘y bermoq	период, происходить (с перерывами)
vary ( <i>v</i> )	farq qilmoq, ajralib turmoq, xarakterlanmoq	отличаться

### **SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:**

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 What is the state form and who is the head of the UK?
- 2 When was the UK the the world's first superpower?
- 3 Since when has Britain been progressing in the development of different spheres?
- 4 How long did it take to UK to unite into one kingdom?
- 5 What are the other names of the United Kingdom?
- 6 What ocean is in the North of the country?
- 7 What separate the UK from the continent?
- 8 What are its closest continental neighbours?
- 9 There are four countries in the UK, what are the capitals of each country?
- 10 Why does Britain have rainfall climate all year round?

➤ *Decide if the statements are TRUE or FALSE*

1	The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland can be called with seven different names, but it is a single country that unites England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland.	
2	The UK is one of the largest islands in Europe.	
3	The Atlantic Ocean is on the north of Britain and the North sea is in the west.	
4	The English Chanel separate Great Britain from Europe.	
5	The Irish republic is also a part of Great Britain.	
6	The temperature in GB is often changeable.	
7	The weather is usually windy and wet on the western part of the country.	
8	The wind blowing from the North Sea makes the climate of the wests coasts wet.	
9	Winters in GB are mild because of the current of the Atlantic Ocean and Gulf Stream.	
10	Summers are never cool in GB.	

## **A Brief history of United Kingdom**

England was settled by humans for at least 500,000 years. The first modern humans (homo sapiens) arrived during the Ice Age (about 35,000 to 10,000 years ago), when the sea levels were lower and Britain was connected to the European



mainland. The people of ancient Britain built the ancient megalithic monuments of Stonehenge and Avebury.

Two thousand years ago the Celts, who had been arriving from Europe, mixed with the peoples who were already in Britain Isles. The Roman province of Britannia covered most of the territory of present day England and Wales. The Romans imposed their own way of living, culture, and language. But inspite of their long occupation of Britain, there isn't much they left behind. Even most of temples, roads and cities were later destroyed. But such place names like Chester, Lancaster, Gloucester remind us of the Romans.



The Romans influenced mainly the towns. In the country (where most people lived) Celtic speech dominated. The farming methods remained there unchanged. We can't speak about Roman's occupation as a large-scale settlement. Later (during the 5th century) two tribes (the Angles and the Saxons) settled in Britain. They settled on a very vast territory. Only in the west of the country King Arthur and his army halted the tribes. But in the 6th century the way of life of these tribes predominated in England.

The Celtic Britons' culture and language survived in Southwest Scotland, Wales and Cornwall. If the Romans had great influence on towns, the Anglo-Saxons influenced the countryside. There new methods of farming were introduced and a number of villages were



founded. The Anglo-Saxons were pagans, when they arrived in Britain. Christianity came from Rome in 597. In the 8th century Britain was invaded by the Vikings, who came from Scandinavia. They settled in the North and West of Scotland and in some regions of Ireland. Later they were defeated by King Alfred. Normans invaded Britain in the 11th century (1066). But this invasion wasn't a large-scale one. Still this invasion influenced the life of Britain greatly. At that

time a feudal system was imposed. Lords and barons were French-speaking Normans. The peasants were the English-speaking Saxons. Barons were responsible to the king, lords — to a baron. Under them were peasants. That was



the beginning of the English class system. The Anglo-Norman kingdom was the most powerful political force at that time. In this period the Germanic language (Middle English) dominated in England. As Northern and Central Wales was

never settled by Saxons and Normans, the Welsh language and culture dominated there. In the 13th century Parliament included elected representatives from urban and rural areas. During the 16th century the power of the English monarch increased. The Tudor dynasty (1485—1603) established a system of government which strongly depended on the monarch. Parliament was split into two Houses. The House of Lords consisted of the aristocracy and the leaders of the Church. The House of Commons consisted of representatives from the towns. During the 17th century Parliament established its supremacy over the monarchy in Britain. The conflict between the monarchy and Parliament led to the Civil Wars, which ended with the victory of Parliament. The leader of the parliamentary army was Oliver Cromwell. But after his death his system of government became unpopular. In the 18th century the Scottish Parliament joined with the English and the Welsh Parliaments. In that century the increased trade led to the Industrial Revolution.

People from rural areas moved to towns. The population of London was close to a million at that time. In the 19th century Britain controlled the biggest Empire in the world. The Empire was made up of Ireland, Canada, Australia, India and large parts of Africa. These countries had internal self-government, but recognized the authority of the British government. Britain



was the greatest economic power. The British spread their culture and civilization around the world. The beginning of the 20th century can't be called stable. Women struggled for their rights. The situation in Ulster wasn't stable. At the

beginning of this century the working class became stronger. In Parliament, the Labour party replaced the Liberals. Trade unions organized themselves. In 1952, **Elizabeth II** (b. 1926) ascended the throne at the age of 26. Although she somewhat rehabilitated the image of the monarchy, her children did not, and their sentimental lives have made the headlines of the tabloid newspapers at least since the marriage of Charles, Prince of Wales, with Lady Diana Spencer in 1981. Until 1980s the Trades Union Congress was the most powerful political force outside the institutions of government.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

authority ( <i>n</i> )	hukumat	правительство
dynasty ( <i>n</i> )	dinastiya, sulola	династия
defeat ( <i>n</i> )	g‘olib bo‘lmoq	быть побежденным
establish ( <i>v</i> )	asos solmoq	устанавливать
feudal ( <i>n</i> )	feodal	феодал
force ( <i>n</i> )	kuch, qudrat	сила, мощь
invade ( <i>v</i> )	bostirib kirmoq	вторгаться
invasion ( <i>n</i> )	istilo	завоевание
influence ( <i>v</i> )	ta’sir, ta’sir ko‘rsatish	влияние
lower ( <i>adj</i> )	pastki, ostki	нижний
mainland ( <i>n</i> )	qit’a	континент
mixed ( <i>adj</i> )	aralashgan	смешанный
occupation ( <i>n</i> )	yashash	территория
peasant ( <i>n</i> )	dehqon	крестьянин
powerful ( <i>adj</i> )	kuchli	сильный, мощный

predominant ( <i>adj</i> )	ustun bo‘lgan	преобладающий
rehabilitate ( <i>v</i> )	oyoqqa turg’izmoq	реабилитировать
speech ( <i>n</i> )	nutq	речь
trade ( <i>n</i> )	savdo-sotiq	торговля

### SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 How are the monuments called built in the Ice Age?
- 2 Who are the first inhabitants of Britain?
- 3 What part of Britain did the Romans mainly cover?
- 4 What tribes settled in Britain in the fifth century?
- 5 Where did the Celtic Britons' culture and language survive?
- 6 What religion came to Britain in 597?
- 7 Where did the Vikings come from?
- 8 Who invaded Britain after Vikings?
- 9 When did the power of monarchy increase in England?
- 10 When did the queen Elizabeth II ascend the throne?

➤ *Decide if the statements are TRUE or FALSE*

1	The people of ancient Britain built the ancient megalithic monuments of Stonehenge and Avebury about 35000 years ago.	
2	The Celts were a separate nation on the British Isles.	
3	There is no place that remind of the Romans anymore in Britain..	

4	Angles and Saxons settled the whole territory of Britain and dominated in Britain.	
5	The higher slice of the society were English speaking people at the time of Normans.	
6	The conflict between monarchy and Parliament caused the Civil War in Britain.	
7	In the 18 <sup>th</sup> century parliaments of the three countries united that led to Industrial Revolution.	
8	Canada, Australia, India and larger part of Africa were independent and had their own form of governance.	
9	After being a great empire, Britain had a peaceful situation in the country.	
10	Children of Elizabeth II were not in much attention of tabloid newspapers.	

## ***Margaret Thatcher***



*She was the first woman prime minister in Europe. She became Prime Minister in Great Britain in 1979.*

*She was born above a shop in the small English town of Grantham. Her father, Alfred Roberts, was a grocer. He worked very hard for little money. Margaret also worked hard, and she went to Oxford University, where she studied chemistry. In 1951 she married Denis Thatcher, a businessman. They had twins, a girl and a boy. The love her life was politics. She didn't have much time for other interests. She said she only needed four hours' sleep*

*a night.*

*She became a politician in 1959, a leader of Conservative Party in 1975, and Prime Minister of Great Britain four years after that. She had a strong personality. A lot of*

*people were afraid of her, and she was called "The Iron Lady". She was prime Minister for eleven years. She finally resigned in 1990, but she did not want to, and she was even in tears when she left 10 Downing Street.*

## National Flag and National Emblem of the UK



The Union Jack is a transnational flag full of historical significance. It represents the union of different countries and the growth of a family of nations whose influence extends far beyond the British Isles.

British flag incorporates the national symbols of three distinct countries, England, Scotland and Northern Ireland. In fact its name "Union Jack" emphasizes the very nature of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland as a union of nations. The flag is also known by another name, this too, emphasizing the idea of union: the "Union flag", perhaps a less common term but a little more precise. The Union Jack symbolizes all this: respect for individuality within a closely knit community.



Coat of Arms: 1st and 4th Quarters: A Red Lion on a yellow field, surrounded by a red double royal tressure flory counter-flory device, representing Scotland; 2nd Quarter: 3 Gold Lions on a red field, representing England; 3rd Quarter: Gold Harp on a Dark Blue Field, representing Northern Ireland.



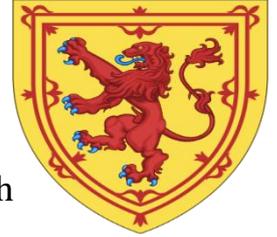
The **flag of England** is derived from St George's Cross (heraldic blazon: *Argent, a cross gules*). The association of the red cross as an emblem of England can be traced back to the Middle Ages, and it was used as a component in the design of the Union Flag in 1606. Since the 1990s, it has been in increasingly wide use, particularly at national sporting events.



Coat of Arms: 3 Gold Lions on a Red Field



The **Flag of Scotland** (Scottish Gaelic: *Bratach na h-Alba*; Scots: *Banner o Scotland*), also known as **St Andrew's Cross** or the **Saltire**, is the national flag of Scotland. As the national flag, the Saltire, rather than the Royal Standard of Scotland, is the correct flag for all individuals and corporate bodies to fly. It is also, where possible, flown from Scottish Government buildings every day from 8a.m/ until sunset.



Coat of Arms: A Red Lion on a Yellow Field, surrounded by a red double royal tressure flory counter-flory device.

*According to legend, the Christian apostle and martyr Saint Andrew, the patron saint of Scotland, was crucified on an X-shaped cross at Patras, (Patrae), in Achaea. Use of the familiar iconography of his martyrdom, showing the apostle bound to an X-shaped cross, first appears in the Kingdom of Scotland in 1180 during the reign of William I. It was again depicted on seals used during the late 13th century, including on one used by the Guardians of Scotland, dated 1286.*



The Flag of Wales incorporates the red dragon, now a popular Welsh symbol, along with the Tudor colours of green and white. It was used by Henry VII at the battle of Bosworth in 1485 after which it was carried in state to St. Paul's Cathedral.

The red dragon was then included in the Tudor royal arms to signify their Welsh descent. It was officially recognized as the Welsh national flag in 1959. The British Union Flag incorporates the flags of Scotland, Ireland and England but does not have any Welsh representation. Technically, however, it is represented by the flag of England due to the Laws in Wales act of 1535 which annexed Wales following the 13th century conquest.

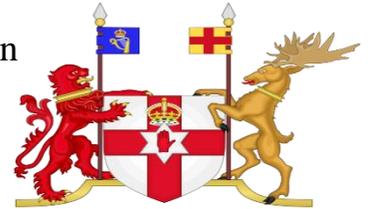


Coat of Arms: A Red Dragon on a Green and White Field.



**Saint Patrick's Saltire** or **Saint Patrick's Cross** is a red saltire (X-shaped cross) on a white field, used to represent the island of Ireland or Saint Patrick, the patron saint of Ireland. In heraldic language, it may be blazoned *Argent, a saltire gules*. **Saint Patrick's Flag** (*Bratach Naomh Pádraig*) is a flag composed of Saint Patrick's Saltire.

The red saltire's association with Saint Patrick dates from the 1780s, when the Order of Saint Patrick adopted it as an emblem. This was a British chivalric order established in 1783 by George III.



Coat of Arms: St. George's Cross, with the Imperial Crown on top of the Red Hand of Ulster, in the center.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

above	yuqorida	выше
annex	bosib olmoq	приложение
chivalric	ritsarlarg a oid, mardonavor	рыцарский, благородный
dragon	ajdar	дракон
heraldic language	geraldik til	геральдический язык
association	assotsiatsiya	ассоциация
chivalry	mardonavor	рыцарство
emphasize	urg'u bermoq	подчеркнуть
grocer	oziq-ovqat sotuvchisi, bokkol	бакалейщик
incorporate	birlashgan	объединять, включать в состав

patron	homiʻ	покровитель
personality	shaxs	личность
perhaps	ehtimol, balki	возможно, вероятно
resigned	iste'foga chiqmoq	уйти в отставку (с трона, с поста)
represent	vakil	представлять
saint	muqaddas	святой
surround	qurshab olmoq	окружать

### **SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:**

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 What does the Union Jack incorporate?
- 2 What does the UK coat of arm represent?
- 3 Since when has the Red cross of England flag been used as a component of the UK's flag?
- 4 What does the coat of arms of England represent?
- 5 What is the other name for national flag of Scotland?
- 6 When was the X-shaped cross first used?
- 7 Why does the national flag of Wales represent red dragon and green and whote colors?
- 8 Which of the four countries the Union flag does not represent?
- 9 Who is Saint Patrick and
- 10 Wat does the word "saltire" mean?

➤ *Fill in the suitable word from the box*

<b>transnational</b>	<b>incorporate</b>	<b>martyr</b>	<b>depict</b>	<b>annex</b>
<b>precise</b>	<b>emphasize</b>	<b>battle</b>	<b>patron</b>	<b>seal</b>

- 1 The \_\_\_\_\_period of a country may slightly influence on peoples' lives.
- 2 In old times, the people who were caught at the battle were \_\_\_\_\_by enemies.
- 3 In Ireland people celebrate St. Patrick's day who is the \_\_\_\_\_of Irish people.
- 4 The republic of Uzbekistan \_\_\_\_\_12 regions and Karapalpakistan republic.
- 5 It's too long story. Can you retell it in a more \_\_\_\_\_way?
- 6 In the \_\_\_\_\_of the book, you an see grammar rules.
- 7 The\_\_\_\_\_with X-cross first appeared in Scotland during the times of William I.
- 8 The lecturer \_\_\_\_\_the significance of the French language during the Normands conquest.
- 9 The \_\_\_\_\_was fierce. Thousands people were killed.
- 10 The yellow color in the Van Goh's painting "Sunflowers"\_\_\_\_\_happiness.

## Economy of the UK

The United Kingdom is the fifth-largest national economy in the world measured by nominal gross domestic product (GDP) and ninth-largest in the world measured by purchasing power parity (PPP), comprising 4% of world GDP. It is the second-largest economy in the European Union by both metrics. The UK is one of the strongest EU countries in regards to GDP growth, job creation and unemployment.



In 2015, the UK was the ninth-largest exporter in the world and the sixth-largest importer, and it had the second-largest stocks of inward foreign direct investment and outward foreign direct investment. It is one of the most globalised economies, and is composed of (in descending order of size) the economies of England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland.

About 25% of Britain's land is arable, and almost half is suitable for meadows and pastures. Its agriculture is highly mechanized and extremely productive; about 2% of the labor force produces 60% percent of the country's food needs. Barley, wheat, rapeseed, potatoes, sugar beets, fruits, and vegetables are the main crops. The widespread dairy industry produces milk, eggs, and cheese. Beef cattle and large numbers of sheep, as well as poultry and pigs, are raised throughout much of the country. There is also a sizable fishing industry, with cod, haddock, mackerel, whiting, trout, salmon, and shellfish making up the bulk of the catch.

Great Britain is one of the world's leading industrialized nations. It has achieved this position despite the lack of most raw materials needed for industry. It must also import 40% of its food supplies. Thus, its prosperity has been dependent upon the export of manufactured goods in exchange for raw materials and foodstuffs. Within the manufacturing sector, the largest industries include machine tools; electric power, automation, and railroad

equipment; ships; aircraft; motor vehicles and parts; electronic and communications equipment; metals; chemicals; coal; petroleum; paper and printing; food processing; textiles; and clothing.

The main industrial and commercial areas are the great conurbations, where about one third of the country's population lives. The administrative and financial center and most important port is Greater London, which also has various manufacturing industries. London is Europe's foremost financial city. Metal goods, vehicles, aircraft, synthetic fibers, and electronic equipment are made in the West Midlands conurbation, which with the addition of Coventry roughly corresponds to the former metropolitan county of West Midlands. The industrial Black Country - the city of Birmingham are in the West Midlands. Greater Manchester has cotton and synthetic textiles, coal, and chemical industries and is a transportation and warehousing center. Liverpool, Britain's second port, along with Southport and Saint Helens are part of the Merseyside conurbation. Leeds, Bradford, and the neighboring metropolitan districts are Britain's main center of woolen, worsted, and other textile production. The Tyneside-Wearside region, with Newcastle upon Tyne as its center and Sunderland as a main city, has coal mines and steel, electrical engineering, chemical, and shipbuilding and repair industries.

The South Wales conurbation, with the ports of Swansea, Cardiff, and Newport, was historically a center of coal mining and steel manufacturing; coal mining has declined sharply, however, in many parts of the region. Current important industries also include oil refining, metals production (lead, zinc, nickel, aluminum), synthetic fibers, and electronics. In Scotland, the region around the River Clyde, including Glasgow, is noted for shipbuilding, marine engineering, and printing as well as textile, food, and chemicals production. The Belfast area in Northern Ireland is a shipbuilding, textile, and food products center.

Great Britain has abundant supplies of coal, oil, and natural gas. Production of oil from offshore wells in the North Sea began in 1975, and the country is self-

sufficient in petroleum. Other mineral resources include iron ore, tin, limestone, salt, china clay, oil shale, gypsum, and lead.

The country's chief exports are manufactured goods, fuels, chemicals, food and beverages, and tobacco. The chief imports are manufactured goods, machinery, fuels, and foodstuffs. The United States, Germany, France, and the Netherlands are the main trading partners, and the Commonwealth countries are also important.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

agriculture ( <i>n</i> )	qishloq xo‘jaligi	сельское хозяйство
aircraft ( <i>n</i> )	samolyot	авиация
arable ( <i>adj</i> )	haydaladigan	пахотный
cod ( <i>n</i> )	treska	треска (рыба)
commercial ( <i>adj</i> )	tijoart	коммерческий
crop ( <i>n</i> )	hosil	урожай
comprise ( <i>v</i> )	qamrab olmoq	охватить
decline ( <i>n, v</i> )	qiyalik, nishab, inqiroz	спад, падать
foodstuff ( <i>n</i> )	oziq-ovqat mahsuloti	пищевой продукт
haddock ( <i>n</i> )	piksha (baliq turi)	пикша (рыба)
inward ( <i>adv</i> )	ichki	внутри
fuel ( <i>n</i> )	yoqilg‘i	топливо
mackerel ( <i>n</i> )	skumbriya	скумбрия
marine engineering ( <i>w.comb</i> )	dengiz muhandisligi	морская инженерия
meadow ( <i>n</i> )	yaylov	луг

measure ( <i>n, v</i> )	baholamoq	мера, мерить
poultry ( <i>n</i> )	xonaki qush	птицеводчество, домашняя птица
pasture ( <i>n</i> )	o'tloq	пастбище
purchase ( <i>n</i> )	xarid	покупка
raw materials ( <i>w.comb</i> )	xomashyo materiallari	сырьевые материалы
refine ( <i>n, v</i> )	qayta ishlash, tozalamoq	обработка, рафинировать, обработовать
salmon ( <i>n</i> )	losos	лосось
shellfish ( <i>n</i> )	molyuska qisqichbaqasimonlar	va моллюски и ракообразные
supple ( <i>v</i> )	elastik	делать податливым, гибким
sharp ( <i>adj</i> )	o'tkir, keskir	острый
trout ( <i>n</i> )	forel, gulmohi	форель
unemployment ( <i>n</i> )	ishsizlik	безработица
whiting ( <i>n</i> )	bo'r	мел
woolen ( <i>adj</i> )	jundan tayyorlangan	шерстяной
worsted ( <i>adj</i> )	taralgan mayin jun	гребенная шерсть, камвольная шерсть

### **SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:**

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 What is the rank of the UK according to GDP and PPP?
- 2 What is the ran of the UK as an exporter and an importer?
- 3 What is the coefficient of labour force and country's food needs in the agricultural sector of the UK?
- 4 What are the main crops of the UK?
- 5 What is the bulk of the catch of fishing industry of the UK?
- 6 How did Great Britain achieve industrial development without insufficient raw materials?
- 7 What are the largest manufacturing sectors of the UK?
- 8 How important is the conurbation in the UK? What conurbations are there in the UK?
- 9 What manufacturing sector has been declined in the UK?
- 10 Which natural resource is the UK sufficient with?

➤ *Decide if the sentences are TRUE or FALSE*

1	The UK is the second-largest economy in the European Union by GDP and PPP.	
2	The UK does not include of the economies of England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland	
3	A quarter of Britain's land is mechanized for agriculture.	
4	Because of the small percentage of labor, the country is hardly able to supply its population needs with agricultural products.	
5	The success of the UK's manufacture is based only on the importing of raw products.	
6	About one third of the country's population live in the cities.	

<b>7</b>	London is the only port city in UK.	
<b>8</b>	West Midlands is a city of the UK.	
<b>9</b>	Shipbuilding is only well developed in Scotland.	
<b>10</b>	The USA is a main trade partner of the UK since 1970s.	

## **LEARNING WITH MODERN PEDAGOGICAL TECHNOLOGIES**

### ***CONCEPTUAL TABLE***

- *Fill in the table with the required information using the knowledge you have and obtained*

<b>Conquest</b>	<b>The ruler</b>	<b>The period</b>	<b><i>The situation in the country</i></b>

### ***“T” TABLE***

- *After reading the text on Economy of Uzbekistan, fill in the “T” table with your ideas according to the tasks for each column*

<b>Sectors of industry that need to be well developed in the condition of Great Britain</b>	<b>Sectors of industry that need to be not much developed in the condition of Great Britain</b>

# *Countries and capitals of the UK*

## **England**



England is a country that is part of the United Kingdom. It shares land borders with Scotland to the north and Wales to the west. The Irish Sea lies northwest of England and the Celtic Sea lies to the southwest. England is separated from continental Europe by the North Sea to the east and the English Channel to the south. The country covers five-eighths of the island of Great Britain (which lies in the North Atlantic) in its center and south; and includes over 100 smaller islands such as the Isles of Scally, and the Isle of Wight.

The area now called England was first inhabited by modern humans during the period, but takes its name from the Angles, one of the Germanic tribes who settled during the 5th and 6th centuries. England became a unified state in the 10th century, and since the Age of Discovery, which began during the 15th century, has had a significant cultural and legal impact on the wider world. The English language, the Anglican Church, and English law – the basis for the common law legal systems of many other countries around the world – developed in England, and the country's parliamentary system of government has been widely adopted by other nations. The Industrial Revolution began in 18th-century England, transforming its society into the world's first action.

England's terrain mostly comprises low hills and plains, especially in central and southern England. However, there are uplands in the north (for example, the mountainous Lake District, and the Pennines) and in the southwest (for example, Dartmoor and the Cotswolds). The capital is London, which is the largest metropolitan area in both the United Kingdom and the European Union. England's population of over 53 million comprises 84% of the population of the United Kingdom, largely concentrated around London, the South East, and conurbations in the Midlands, the North West, the North East, and Yorkshire, which each developed as major industrial regions during the 19th century.

The Kingdom of England—which after 1535 included Wales—ceased being a separate sovereign state on 1 May 1707, when the Acts of Union put into effect the terms agreed in the Treaty of Union the previous year, resulting in a political union with the Kingdom of Scotland to create the Kingdom of Great Britain. In 1801, Great Britain was united with the Kingdom of Ireland through another Act of Union to become the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland. In 1922 the Irish Free State seceded from the United Kingdom, leading to the latter being renamed the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.

#### **ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:**

cease ( <i>v</i> )	barham bermoq	прекратить
concentrate ( <i>v</i> )	to‘plamoq, jamlamoq	концентрант
conurbation	qo’shni yerlarni qo’shib olish hisobiga shaharni kengaytirish	конурбация
cover ( <i>n, v</i> )	tarqalmoq yoyilmoq	распространение настояться

major ( <i>adj</i> )	muhim, jiddiy	важное
period ( <i>n</i> )	davr, vaqt, zamon	период
previous ( <i>adj</i> )	avvalgi, oldingi	предыдущий
rename ( <i>v</i> )	qayta nomlash	переименовывать
sovereign ( <i>adj</i> )	suveren	суверенное государство
unified ( <i>adj</i> )	birlashgan	объединенный

## London

What is London?

We can say that it is one of the largest cities in the world, that it is one of the world's most important ports and that is the capital of Great Britain.



But all these answers do not give any idea of London. London is more than 2,500 years old. About 10 million people live there. There are more than 10,000 streets in London.

Most of the streets are not very wide and most of the buildings are not tall, but multistory buildings are also there and almost all of them are hotels and offices.

London Underground (or Tube) is the oldest and longest in Europe. There are 11 different lines with more than 500 stations.

Although London is a crowded and noisy city, you can find many pleasant parks and green squares there.

Regent's park is the most beautiful park and Hyde Park is the largest, it is one of the most popular places of rest of Londoners on hot summer days.

There are three main parts in London: the City, the West End, and The East End.

The oldest part of London is the City, the business center. However, the political center is Westminster which is in the West End.

The West End is famous for its rich shops, hotels, restaurants, cinemas, museums and other places of interest.

The east End is another part of London. The East End is famous for its docks but they have closed.

There is so much to see in London that even Londoners can always find new sights. They like to say: "When a man is tired of London, he is tired of life".

### ***A Short History of London***

*In the year of 5 B.C. the Romans came to England and found a little settlement named Llyn-din. The people who lived there were called Britons. They managed to drive the Romans away, but soon the Romans returned there. The Romans began building roads in latin-strata. The English word "street" came from this word. They called the little settlement Llyn-din – Londinium. They built a high stonewall around the city. Now it is the City, it has remained since the Romans stayed in Britain for 4 hundred years then other peoples came there. They were the Angles and the Saxons. People began calling the southern part of the island England, it means "the land of Angels". In 1066 the Normans came from France. They made the English people speak French. They began building a large fortress on the bank of the Thames – The Tower. Norman kings lived there, and later it became a prison. This Tower is by now about 9 hundred years old. Now it is a museum. The oldest bridge of London is a stone London Bridge. In 1750 Westminster Bridge was built. It was the second bridge.*

#### **ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:**

angel (n)	farishta	ангел
bank (n)	g'ov, sohil	зд. берег реки
bridge (n)	ko'prik	мост
fortress (n)	qal'a, mustahkamlik	крепость

multistory ( <i>adj</i> )	ko‘pqavatli	многоэтажный
port ( <i>n</i> )	port shahar	порт
prison ( <i>n</i> )	qamoqxona	тюрьма
road ( <i>n</i> )	yo‘l	дорога
sight ( <i>n</i> )	ko‘rinish, diqqatga sazovor joy	вид, достопримечательность
station ( <i>n</i> )	stansiya	станция
underground	metropolitan	метро

### **SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:**

- 1 How old is London?
- 2 How many people live in London?
- 3 What kind of streets are there in London?
- 4 What can you say about London underground?
- 5 What parks are there in London?
- 6 How many parts are there in London?
- 7 What is the City?
- 8 What is the West End?
- 9 What is the East End?
- 10 What do people of London say about their city? Why do they think so?

➤ Find the appropriate information from the text and fill in the gaps

- 1 England borders with \_\_\_\_\_ to the north and \_\_\_\_\_ to the west.
- 2 There are three sea borders of England: \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 The name of England originated from \_\_\_\_\_ tribes meaning “angels”.
- 4 Since the 10<sup>th</sup> century England, its \_\_\_\_\_ began to prosper and spread throughout the world.
- 5 In the 18<sup>th</sup> century England became \_\_\_\_\_ country
- 6 The bigger part of England consists of \_\_\_\_\_ as well as \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 The capital of England is a \_\_\_\_\_ city
- 8 The country's parliamentary system of government has been \_\_\_\_\_ by other nations.
- 9 The Kingdom of England \_\_\_\_\_ being a separate sovereign state on 1 May 1707, when the Acts of Union put into effect the terms agreed in the Treaty of Union.
- 10 In 1922 the Irish Free State \_\_\_\_\_ from the United Kingdom, leading to the latter being renamed the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.

➤ What places of interests of London do you know? Match the name of places with pictures

<b>Tower of London</b>	<b>St. Paul's Cathedral</b>	<b>London Bridge</b>	<b>Buckingham Palace</b>
<b>Windsor Castle</b>	<b>Westminster Abbey</b>	<b>Trafalgar Square</b>	<b>Shakespeare's Globe Theatre</b>



1. \_\_\_\_\_



2. \_\_\_\_\_



3. \_\_\_\_\_



4. \_\_\_\_\_



5. \_\_\_\_\_



6. \_\_\_\_\_



7. \_\_\_\_\_



8. \_\_\_\_\_

## Scotland



Scotland takes up one third of the territory of the British Isles, but its population is not very big. At the beginning of the 6<sup>th</sup> century, Scotland was ruled by Scottish kings and queens but was divided between different groups of people. The Picts and Celts, who were the oldest inhabitants; the Scots who came from the Northern Ireland; the Britons, who were driven North by the Anglo-Saxon invaders of England; and the Angles<sup>5</sup>, who originally came from what is now Germany. Scotland was an independent kingdom, often at war with England until 1016. In 1063 King James VI of Scotland became the king of England too, as James I, and from that time, the countries were under the same monarch. In 1707, the Act of Union incorporated Scotland with England in the United Kingdom.

Edinburgh became capital of Scotland in 1437 when the King of Scotland left to the more northerly city of Perth. Edinburgh was once part of Northumbria in England. It got its name from a castle built by the king of Northumbria, called Edwin's Burgh". The city was a part of Scotland in 1341. Edinburgh is built on hills, and the city walls, built in 1450, forced people to build upwards, so much of the old city now has a crowded look. Edinburgh has a strong cultural life and history and is sometimes called Athens of the North.

There are only about five million Scots, and most of them live in the southern half of the country called "the Lowlands", where the major cities situated. Besides, there is "the Highlands", which is most northland and the most unpopulated area with a harsh climate, and the Southern Uplands with hills which border on England. Although Scotland has its own language – Gaelic, most Scottish people speak English. The English language is spoken all over Scotland with



---

<sup>5</sup> Angles – a low-German tribe which settled in Northumbria, Mercia and East Anglia (England) in 1013);

variety regional accents, but all of these can be recognized as Scottish, with the sounds pronounced more nearly as written than in standard English. Besides, many Scottish people still use some Scottish words when they speak English. “Wee”, meaning “small”, is often heard in such expressions as “wee laddie” – “small boy”. If someone answers your question with “aye”, they agree with you: “aye” means “yes”.

One of the things that people associate with Scotland is the kilt<sup>6</sup>. It is a relic of the time when the clan system existed in the Highlands. Everybody in the clan had the same family name, like McDonald or McGregor (Mac means “son of”). The clan had its own territory and was ruled by a chieftain. Each clan has its own tartan<sup>7</sup>.

The sport of golf originated in Scotland.

#### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

associate ( <i>v</i> )	quyi	ассоциировать
expression ( <i>n</i> )	ifodalilik	выражение
force ( <i>n, v</i> )	kuch, majbur qilmoq	сила, принуждать
castle ( <i>n</i> )	qal’a, qasr	замок
clan ( <i>n</i> )	urug‘ jamoasi	клан
chieftain ( <i>n</i> )	qabila sardori	глава (племени)
harsh ( <i>adj</i> )	qo‘pol yoqimsiz	суровый
inhabitant ( <i>n</i> )	yashovchi, turuvchi	поселенец
nearly ( <i>prep., adv</i> )	qariib, deyarli	почти, около, приблизительно

<sup>6</sup> The kilt – a checked pleated skirt;

<sup>7</sup> Tartan – a traditional Scottish pattern of fabric with crossed narrow and wide colored stripes.

pronounce ( <i>v</i> )	talaffuz qilmoq	произносить
relic ( <i>n</i> )	iz, eskilik, yodgorlik	реликт, пережиток
rule ( <i>n</i> )	boshqarmoq	правило
take up ( <i>v</i> )	band qilmoq, egallamoq	занимать
unpopulated area ( <i>w.comb</i> )	aholisiz hudud	ненаселённая территория
upwards ( <i>adv</i> )	yuqoriga, tepaga	вверх

## Edinburgh



*Edinburgh is the capital of Scotland and it is located in central eastern Scotland, near the Firth of Forth, close to the North Sea. Thanks to its spectacular rocks, rustic buildings and a huge collection of medieval and classic architecture, including numerous stone decorations, it is often considered one of the most lively cities in Europe. Scottish people called it Auld Reekie, Edina, Athens of the North and Britain's Other Eye.*

In the «old town» the streets are narrow. The tall houses with narrow windows go up the hills to Edinburgh castle, which is one thousand years old. The modern town lies at the foot of the hills. The streets are straight and well planned, so it is easy to walk in the city when you go sightseeing in Edinburgh. Many great men have lived and worked in Edinburgh. Robert Burns, the great Scottish poet, published his first book of poems in Edinburgh. There is a monument to him in the city. Edinburgh is also proud of Walter Scott, the father of the historical novel in world literature, and Robert Louis Stevenson, a famous English writer.

This city is a great educational centre, there are three universities. Such scientists as John Napier who invented logarithms, Adam Smith, the father of political economy, Alexander Bell, the inventor of the telephone also lived and worked in Edinburgh.

The Holyrood Palace in Edinburgh is another official residence of the Queen besides Buckingham Palace. This Palace is a museum with a number of museums inside it. There are the Museum of Childhood with its unique collection of toys and games, the Writer's Museum, the People's Story Museum, which tells the story of ordinary people. It seems that past and present live in Edinburgh side by side, and it gives a special charm to the city. But in fact, Edinburgh is a busy town. People are employed in manufacturing industry: electrical and electronics engineering, paper printing and publishing, food and drink industry.

### ***The Story of a spider and Robert the Bruce***

*Hundred of years ago there was a king of Scotland and his name was Robert the Bruce. It was a good thing that he was both brave and wise, because the times in which he lived were wild and dangerous. The King of England was at war with him, and had led a great army into Scotland to drive him out of the land and to make Scotland a part of England.*

*Battle after battle he had fought with England. Six times Robert the Bruce had led his brave little army against his foes. Six times his men had been beaten, until finally they were driven into flight. At last the army of Scotland was entirely scattered, and the king was forced to hide in the woods and in lonely places among the mountains.*

*One rainy day, Robert the Bruce lay in a cave, listening to the rainfall outside the cave entrance. He was tired and felt sick at heart, ready to give up all hope. It seemed to him that there was no use for him to try to do anything more.*

*As he lay thinking, he noticed a spider over his head, getting ready to weave her web. He watched her as she worked slowly and with great care. Six times she tried to throw her thread from one edge of the cave wall to another. Six times her thread fell short. "Poor thing!" said Robert the Bruce. "You, too, know what it's like to fail six times in a row." But the spider did not lose hope. With still more care, she made ready to try for a seventh time. Robert the Bruce almost forgot his own troubles as he watched, fascinated. She swung herself out upon the slender*

line. Would she fail again? No! The thread was carried safely to the cave wall, and fastened there.

“Yes!” cried Bruce, “I, too, will try a seventh time!”

So he arose and called his men together. He told them of his plans, and sent them out with hopeful messages to cheer the discouraged people. Soon there was an army of brave men around him. A seventh battle was fought, and this time the King of England was forced to retreat back to his own country.

It wasn't long before England recognized Scotland as an independent country with Robert the Bruce as its rightful king.

And to this very day, the victory and independence of Scotland is traced to a spider who kept trying again and again to spin her web in a cave and inspired the king of Scotland, Robert the Bruce.

<https://www.storiestogrowby.org/story/spider-robert-the-bruce/>

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

architecture (n)	arxitektura	архитектура
cave (n)	teshmoq, o‘yumoq	щирать, высекать
cheer (v)	ma‘qullash, qutlamoq, ruhlantirmoq	зд. взбодрить
discouraged (adj)	sarosimaga tushirmoq, esankiratib qo‘yumoq	обескураженный
entrance (n)	kirish, kirish huquqi	вход
fail (v)	muvaqqiyatsizlikka uchramoq	терпеть неудачу
fasten (v)	mustahkamlamoq	закреплять
huge (adj)	ulkan	громадный
inspire (v)	ilhomlantirmoq	воодушевлять
lie (v)	cho‘zilmoq, yoyilmoq	расстилаться

locate (v)	qurmoq, barpo etmoq	устанавливать
narrow (adj)	tor, katta bo‘lamagn	узкий
retreat (v)	nari ketmoq, chetga chiqmoq	отходить, отступить
rightful (adj)	qonuniy, huquqiy	законный, принадлежающий по праву
row (n)	qator	ряд
scatter (v)	olib tashlamoq, buzmoq, parokanda qilmoq	разбивать, разрушать
slender (adj)	kelishgan, xushbicim, ingichka	стройный, тонкий
spectacular (n)	ta’sirchan	эффектные
thread (n)	ip, tanob, tola	нить
trace (n)	yo‘l, so‘qmoq, iz	зд. путь, тропу, след
watch (v)	kuzatmoq	наблюдать
web (n)	o‘rgimchak to‘ri	паутина

### **SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:**

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 What kind of tribes and groups lived in Scotland?
- 2 Was Scotland an independent state from England?
- 3 What was the reason of uniting Scotland and England?
- 4 Since when has Scotland been included in the United Kingdom?

- 5 How was the name of Scotland's capital originated?
- 6 Which part of the country is mostly populated?
- 7 How different is Scottish English from original English?
- 8 What is mostly associated with Scotts?
- 9 What is a kilt and what is a tartan?
- 10 What is a clan?

➤ *Match the titles to each paragraph:*

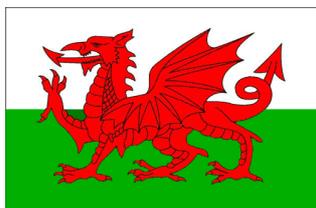
<b>Peculiarity of Scottish</b>	<b>The origin of Edinburgh</b>
<b>The language of Scotts</b>	<b>The origin of Scotland and Scotts</b>

➤ *Find out if the statements are TRUE or FALSE*

<b>1</b>	Scotland's population is not small.	
<b>2</b>	The oldest inhabitants are Britons and Anglo-Saxons.	
<b>3</b>	Angels came to Scotland from Germany.	
<b>4</b>	Scotland seldom had wars with England and always was independent.	
<b>5</b>	England and Scotland were under the same monarch since the times of King James VI.	
<b>6</b>	Edinburgh got its name from the king of Northumbria.	
<b>7</b>	Edinburgh looks like a densely populated city.	
<b>8</b>	The Athens is in the north of Scotland.	
<b>9</b>	Most population of Scotland live in the Lowlands.	

10	The Highlands is less populated area of Scotland because of climate.	
11	Gaelic is the old language, but most Scotts speak on that language.	
12	The English spoken by Scotts is different from standard English.	
13	Kilt is an unusual dress for Scotts.	
14	Clan system means the same family name for all people of Scotland.	
15	Tartans differ the clans.	

## Wales



Wales is a country of hills, mountains, old hard rocks and with deep rivers and valleys. There are three National Parks there. The pride of Wales in scenery is Snowdonia<sup>8</sup>. Over three million people live in Wales. About 75% of population live in towns and urban areas. Cardiff is the capital of Wales. It is situated near the mouth of the Taff River. The most important towns and cities are Swansea and Newport. Wales has been united with England for seven hundred years. Prince Charles became the Prince of Wales in 1969.

Wales has its own Welsh language. About 20% of the people of Wales speak Welsh and children learn it in Welsh schools.

A large part of south Wales is industrialized. Wales is an important center for electronics, chemical elements, and steel. The main activity of northern Wales is sheep and cattle rearing.

---

<sup>8</sup> Snowdonia - National Park in the north of Wales. It is the highest mountain in Great Britain, 1085 meters above the sea.

Wales attracts many tourists, though the English built castles all over Wales.

The favourite sport in Wales is Rugby.

## Cardiff

Cardiff is the capital (since 1955) and largest city in Wales and the tenth largest city in the United Kingdom. The city is Wales' chief commercial centre, the base for most national cultural and sporting institutions, the Welsh national media, and the seat of the National Assembly for Wales. The population is 346,100, while the population of the Larger Urban Zone is 861,400.



Cardiff is a significant tourist center and the most popular visitor destination in Wales with 18.3 million visitors in 2010. In 2011, Cardiff was ranked sixth in the world in National Geographic's alternative tourist destinations.

Cardiff has many cultural sites varying from the historical Cardiff Castle and out of town *Castell Coch* to the more modern *Wales Millennium Centre* and *Cardiff Bay*. Cardiff was a finalist in the European Capital of Culture 2008.

Annual events in Cardiff that have become regular appearances in Cardiff's calendar include *Sparks in the Park*, *The Great British Cheese Festival*, *Cardiff Mardi Gras*, *Cardiff Winter Wonderland*, *Cardiff Festival* and *Made in Roath*.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

annual ( <i>adj</i> )	yillik	годовой
alternative ( <i>adj</i> )	altirnativ, muqobil	альтернатива
appearance ( <i>n</i> )	qiyofa	внешность
attract ( <i>v</i> )	jalb qilmoq	привлечь

destination ( <i>n</i> )	vazifa, atalganlik, boorish joyi	место (для посещения)
event ( <i>n</i> )	voqealar	события
finalist ( <i>n</i> )	finalist	финалист
hill ( <i>n</i> )	tepalik	холм
rank ( <i>v</i> )	martaba, unvon	ранг
rock ( <i>n</i> )	qoya	рок
scenery ( <i>n</i> )	manzara	пейзажи
site ( <i>n</i> )	tomon, yo‘nalish, joy	сторона, местность
steel ( <i>n</i> )	po‘lat	сталь
town ( <i>n</i> )	shahar	город

### **SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:**

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 What kind of country is Wales?
- 2 What kind of place is Snowdonia?
- 3 What can you say about the population of Wales?
- 4 What are the most important cities of Wales?
- 5 How long has Wales been united with England?
- 6 What languages do people speak in Wales?
- 7 What can you tell about southern and northern parts of Wales?
- 8 What is a specific feature of Welsh people?

9 Is Cardiff an ancient or modern city?

10 What is the general idea of Cardiff you have got?

➤ *Fill in the suitable word from the box*

<b>significant</b>	<b>destination</b>	<b>ranked</b>	<b>urban</b>	<b>though</b>
<b>include</b>	<b>sporting</b>	<b>rearing</b>	<b>attract</b>	<b>while</b>

1. Uzbekistan \_\_\_\_\_ as the seventh gold exporting country.
2. In most \_\_\_\_\_ areas, people tend to be short of time.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ she is quite fond of politics, it was too difficult for her to participate in political affairs.
4. In some distant regions of Uzbekistan, such as of Bukhara “Karakul” sheep \_\_\_\_\_ is being well developed and exported.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ looking through the newspaper, I came across on a very interesting article.
6. Nowadays, Uzbekistan \_\_\_\_\_ more and more tourists around the world.
7. You should \_\_\_\_\_ this document to that folder, it is very important.
8. The most \_\_\_\_\_ thing about this day, that all people celebrate it.
9. Cardiff is one of the most tourist \_\_\_\_\_ in United Kingdom.
10. More and more \_\_\_\_\_ institutions are being built in Uzbekistan.

## **Northern Ireland**

Ireland consists of broad central lowland with a few hills, surrounded by a rim of higher land. There are many lands in Ireland. No part of the island is more than 70 miles from the sea. The island has a typical



maritime climate with mild, damp winters and cool cloudy summers. Grass grows well in such climate and it makes the island look green and beautiful. Irish poets call the island “the Emerald Isle”.

Northern Ireland is the smallest component of the United Kingdom. It is divided into six counties. It has a population about 1.5 million people. 53% of the population lives in urban areas.

Belfast became the capital of Northern Ireland in 1920. It is the largest city and principal seaport and industrial center of Ireland with a population of over 444,000. Belfast can boast with biggest shipyard in Europe. Its chief industries are also the production of linen and other textiles, clothing and engineering.

Since 1922 Northern Ireland has been a part of the United Kingdom. Northern Ireland has a Governor and a Parliament consisting of a Senate (26 members) and a House of Commons (52 members) which legislates for its own area except for matters of imperial concern. It returns 12 members to the House of Commons at Westminster.

The whole economy of Northern Ireland is closely integrated with that of Great Britain. Agriculture, textile and shipbuilding are highly developed in Ulster. The largest industry is agriculture conducted for the most part on small family farms. It occupies about 72 % of the land area.

## **Belfast**



Belfast from Irish: Béal Feirste, meaning "rivermouth of the sandbanks", is the capital and largest city of Northern Ireland, the second largest on the island of Ireland, and the heart of the tenth largest Primary Urban Area in the United

Kingdom. On the River Lagan, it had a population of 286,000 at the 2011 census and 333,871 after the 2015 council reform. Belfast was granted city status in 1888.

Belfast was a centre of the Irish linen, tobacco processing, rope-making and shipbuilding industries: in the early 20th century, Harland and Wolff, which built the RMS Titanic, was the world's biggest and most productive shipyard. Belfast played a key role in the Industrial Revolution, and was a global industrial centre until the latter half of the 20th century. It has sustained a major aerospace and missiles industry since the mid-1930s. Industrialization and the inward migration it brought made Belfast Ireland's biggest city at the beginning of the 20th century.

Today, Belfast remains a centre for industry, as well as the arts, higher education, business, and law, and is the economic engine of Northern Ireland. The city suffered greatly during the Troubles<sup>9</sup>, but latterly has undergone a sustained period of calm, free from the intense political violence of former years, and substantial economic and commercial growth. Additionally, Belfast city centre has undergone considerable expansion and regeneration in recent years, notably around Victoria Square.

Belfast is served by two airports: George Best Belfast City Airport in the city, and Belfast International Airport 15 miles (24 km) west of the city. Belfast is a major port, with commercial and industrial docks dominating the Belfast Lough shoreline, including the Harland and Wolff shipyard, and is listed by the Globalization and World Cities Research Network (GaWC) as a global city.

---

<sup>9</sup> Troubles - The Troubles (Irish: Na Trioblóidí) was an ethno-nationalist conflict in Northern Ireland during the late 20th century. Also known internationally as the Northern Ireland conflict, it is sometimes described as a "guerrilla war" or "low-level war". The conflict began in the late 1960s and is usually deemed to have ended with the Good Friday Agreement of 1998. Although the Troubles mainly took place in Northern Ireland, violence spilled over at times into parts of the Republic of Ireland, England and mainland Europe.

## ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

broad ( <i>adj</i> )	keng	широкий
cloudy ( <i>adj</i> )	bulutli	облачный
consist ( <i>v</i> )	iborat	состоять
county ( <i>n</i> )	graflik	графство
damp ( <i>n</i> )	nam	сырой
maritime ( <i>n</i> )	dengizchilik	морской
mild ( <i>adj</i> )	yumshoq	мягкий
missile ( <i>adj</i> )	reaktiv	реактивный
notably ( <i>adv</i> )	diqqatga sazovor	в особенности
political violence ( <i>word combination</i> )	siyosiy zo‘ravnlik	политическая расправа
seaport ( <i>n</i> )	dengiz porti	морский порт
serve ( <i>v</i> )	xizmat qilmoq	служить
shipyard ( <i>n</i> )	kemasozlik	судостроение
substantial ( <i>adj</i> )	yetarli	достаточный

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 What does the name of the Northern Ireland’s capital mean?
- 2 What part of Belfast had the largest population in 2015?
- 3 When was Belfast given the city status?

- 4 What branches of industries are developed in Belfast?
- 5 When did Belfast sustain a major aerospace and missiles industry?
- 6 Which period was the hardest for Belfast?
- 7 How many airports are there in Belfast?
- 8 Where do commercial and industrial docks dominate in Belfast?
- 9 What shipyards are located in the Belfast Lough?
- 10 Which organization is Belfast listed as a global city by?

➤ Find statements are TRUE or FALSE:

1	Ireland consists of lowlands and highlands.	
2	The poets call that Ireland “Emerald Island” because of its climate.	
3	Northern Ireland is the smallest country of all other Great Britain’s countries.	
4	The population of Ireland is very small and more than 50 % of it live in cities.	
5	The population of Belfast is more than a half million.	
6	Northern Ireland has a king that governs the country.	
7	After 1922 Ireland was included in UK.	
8	Northern Ireland has its own legislation consisting of a Governor, Parliament, and a House of Commons.	
9	Ulster is the only industrial city.	
10	72 % of agriculture is developed by small family farms	



# The culture,



# the heritage,



# the people



➤ Give your comments on the following English proverb below:

*So many countries so many customs*  
an English proverb

*Every nation and every country has its own traditions and customs. In Britain traditions play a more important part in people's life than in other countries. The British are proud of their traditions and carefully keep them up.*

## **British Traditional Holidays**

Great Britain is famous for its old traditions. Some of them existed in ancient times and survived through centuries. Some of them appeared when Christianity came to British Isles. Speaking about religious holidays one can't but mention Easter, Pancake Day and Mother's Day. The dates of Pancake Day and Mother's Day aren't strict; they depend on the date of Easter that varies every year.

December 25 is a religious ceremony commemorating the birth of Christ. Children wake up early to find presents in their stockings. Traditional Christmas tree and dinner are in every British family.



Pancake day is the popular name for the Shrove Tuesday, the day before the first day of Lent. In the middle ages people on that day made merry and ate pancakes. The ingredients of pancakes are all forbidden by Church during Lent, that is why they have to be used the day before. The most common form of celebrating this day in the old times was the all town ball game or tug-of-war, in which everyone was tearing here and there, trying to get the ball or rope into their part of the city. Today the only custom, which is observed throughout Britain, is pancake eating.

For the English people the best-known name for the fourth in Lent Sunday is Mothering Sunday or Mother's Day. For 3 centuries, this day has been a day of small family gatherings when absent sons and daughters return to their homes.

Gifts are made to mothers by children of all ages. Flowers and cakes are still traditional gifts. Violets and primroses are most popular flowers. Sometimes the whole family goes to church and then there is a special dinner at which roast lamb, rice pudding and homemade wines are served.

Easter is one of the most important holidays in Christianity. Before the arrival of Christianity, people believed that the Sun dies in winter and revivals in spring. Many countries took their name for Easter from the Jewish festival of Passover. The day before Passover homes are cleaned. The first Easter took place during the Passover, which is always celebrated at full Moon, so to keep Easter Day on a Sunday following the first full Moon after spring equinox (21 March).



The second Saturday in June, British celebrate the Queen's official birthday. This day is held in the hopes for better weather for all the troops that gather for the annual trooping the colour ceremony. On this day, usually lots of marching, military music and the soldiers are dressed in colourful uniforms.

In England, it is a time for giving and receiving presents, mostly Easter eggs. We can say that the egg is the most popular emblem of Easter, but springtime flowers are also used to stress the nature's awakening. Nowadays there are many chocolate Easter eggs, having some small gifts inside. But a real hard-boiled egg, decorated and painted in bright colours still appears on breakfast tables on Easter Day, or it's hidden in the house or garden for children to find. The egg that is boiled really hard will last for years. Egg rolling is a traditional Easter pastime. You roll the eggs down a slope until they are cracked and broken, after they are eaten up.

#### **ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:**

appear (v)

paydo bo'lmoq

появляться

awaken (v)

uyg'otmoq, qo'zg'atmoq

пробуждаться

census ( <i>n</i> )	aholini ro‘yxatga olish	перепись
dominate ( <i>n</i> )	ustunlik qilmoq	доминировать
equinox ( <i>n</i> )	muvozanat	равновесие
intense ( <i>adj</i> )	jiddiy, jadal, intensiv	ощутимый, выделяемый
latter ( <i>adj</i> )	oxiri, oxiridagi	последний (упомянутый)
mention ( <i>v</i> )	eslatmoq	упоминать
notable ( <i>adj</i> )	ajoyib, nodir	примечательный
primrose ( <i>n</i> )	navro‘zgul	примула, первоцвет
recent ( <i>adv</i> )	yaqinda	недавний
reform ( <i>v, v</i> )	isloh qilmoq	реформы
revival ( <i>n</i> )	tiklanish, qayta yaralish	возрождение
roll ( <i>v</i> )	dumalatmoq, g‘ildiratmoq	катить
roast lamb ( <i>w.comb</i> )	qo‘y go‘shidan qovurdoq	жаркое из баранины
shore ( <i>n</i> )	qirg‘oq, sohil	берег
sustain ( <i>v</i> )	saqlamoq, ta‘minlamoq	поддерживать

### **SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:**

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 Which English holidays exist from ancient times?
- 2 Which holidays are not strict?
- 3 Which holidays are religious?

- 4 What is cooked on Pancake day?
- 5 Are there Uzbek holidays which varies on the date? Are they religious?
- 6 What kind of holiday is Mother's Day in Britain?
- 7 What similarities and differences are there between Britain and Uzbek Mother's day?
- 8 On what holiday do people in Britain clean their houses? And when do the Uzbek people do the same?
- 9 What did people believe before Easter holiday came?
- 10 Do you know what reason of giving a boiled egg on Easter day?

➤ *Decide if the statements are TRUE or FALSE:*

1	In Britain people strongly keep to their traditions and customs.	
2	There are only religious holidays in Britain.	
3	On the day of pancake people cook pancakes.	
4	The game played on the day of pancake remained till nowadays.	
5	On Mothering day, children are gifted with flowers.	
6	A family brings food to church on Mother's day and have a party there.	
7	The name of Easter was taken from Jewish.	
8	Easter should be celebrated at the first full month (equinox) of March.	
9	A hard boiled egg is decorated and can be gifted to only children on Easter day.	
10	People roll an egg on Easter day.	

## **English people as they are**

One of the most striking features of English life is the self-discipline and courtesy of people of all classes. There is little noisy behavior, and practically no loud disputing in the street. People do not rush excitedly for seats in buses or trains, but take their seats in queues at bus stops in a quite and orderly manner.

Englishmen are naturally polite and never tired of saying “Thank you”, “I’m sorry”, “beg your pardon”. If you follow anyone who is entering a building or a room, he will hold a door open for you. Many foreigners have commented on the remarkable politeness of the English people.

English people don’t like to display their emotions even in dangerous and tragic situations, and ordinary people to remain good-tempered and cheerful under difficulties.

The Englishman does not like any boasting or showing off in manners, dress and speech. Sometimes he conceals his knowledge: a linguist, for example, may not mention his understanding of a foreign language.

The Englishman prefers his own house to an apartment in a block of flats, because he doesn’t wish his doing to be overlooked by his neighbors. “An Englishman’s house is his castle”.

Many Englishmen are very good to their wives at home. They help their wives in many ways. They clean the windows when they are at home on Saturday afternoon. They often wash up the dishes after supper in the evening.

Sunday is a very quiet day in London. Lots of the shops are closed, and so are the theatres and most of the cinemas. Londoners like to get out of town on Sundays. The sea is not far – only fifty or sixty miles away and people like to go down to the sea in summer or somewhere to the country for skiing in winter.

## ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

apartment ( <i>n</i> )	xona, kvartira	квартира, апартамент
behavior ( <i>n</i> )	xulq-atvor	поведение
boast ( <i>v</i> )	maqтанmoq	хвастаться
comment ( <i>n, v</i> )	sharhlamoq	комментарий, комментировать
conceal ( <i>v</i> )	yashirmoq, sir saqlamoq	скрыть, утаивать
dispute ( <i>n, v</i> )	tortishuv, bahs	спор, разногласие
discipline ( <i>n</i> )	intizom, tartib	дисциплина
display ( <i>n, v</i> )	ko'rsatmoq, namoyish qilmoq	дисплей, отображение, показывать, демонстрировать
excitedly ( <i>adv</i> )	hayajonlanib, to'liqinlanib	взволнованно
follow ( <i>v</i> )	kuzatmoq, poylamoq	следовать
overlook ( <i>v</i> )	nazardan qochirmoq	упускать из виду
politeness ( <i>n</i> )	xushmuomalalik, boadablik	вежливость
striking ( <i>adj</i> )	hayratda qoldiradigan	поразительный

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 What is the most surprising feature of English people?
- 2 Which words do Englishmen frequently say?
- 3 How do Englishmen behave in difficult situations?
- 4 In you opinion why don't the Englishmen like to boast?

- 5 Do you see any similarities in Englishmen's feature with our people?
- 6 How can you understand the saying "An Englishman's house is his castle"?
- 7 Does the attitude of English men towards to their wives mean respect or obey?
- 8 How can you compare the same attitude of Uzbek men towards to their wives?
- 9 How do English people spend their weekends?
- 10 How do Uzbek people spend their weekends?

➤ *Fill in the suitable word from the box*

<b>courtesy</b>	<b>queue</b>	<b>display</b>	<b>boasting</b>	<b>overlook</b>
<b>rush</b>	<b>comment</b>	<b>remain</b>	<b>conceal</b>	<b>a block of flats</b>

- 1 Though the news were striking, the manager \_\_\_\_\_ calm.
- 2 It's better not \_\_\_\_\_ your feelings to everybody, because not all people can understand it.
- 3 Most people in urban areas live in \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 4 I'd like you to give some \_\_\_\_\_ on my article.
- 5 I respect him for his \_\_\_\_\_. He is so kind with everybody at work.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ is usually a negative feature, though in some circumstances it can work.
- 7 Though he is quite talented, he \_\_\_\_\_ his knowledge.
- 8 I think nobody likes to be \_\_\_\_\_ by somebody.

- 9 Mary was in a \_\_\_\_\_to work, so she left her purse at home.
- 10 There was a long \_\_\_\_\_in the supermarket, so I had to wait too long to pay for my purchase.

## English National Cuisine

British cuisine is the specific set of cooking traditions and practices associated with the United Kingdom. British cuisine has been described as "unfussy dishes made with quality local ingredients, matched with simple sauces to accentuate flavour,



rather than disguise it. However, British cuisine has absorbed the cultural influence of those who have settled in Britain, producing many hybrid dishes, such as the Anglo-Indian chicken tikka masala. Fish and chips, a popular take-away food of the United Kingdom

Celtic agriculture and animal breeding produced a wide variety of foodstuffs for indigenous Celts and Britons. Anglo-Saxon England developed meat and savoury herb stewing techniques before the practice became common in Europe. The Norman conquest introduced exotic spices into England in the Middle Ages. The British Empire facilitated a knowledge of India's elaborate food tradition of "strong, penetrating spices and herbs". Food rationing policies, put in place by the British government during wartime periods of the 20th century, are said to have been the stimulus for British cuisine's poor international reputation. It has been claimed, contrary to popular belief, that people in southern England eat more garlic per head than the people of northern France.

British cuisine has traditionally been limited in its international recognition to the full breakfast, fish and chips, and the Christmas dinner. Other British dishes include the Sunday roast, steak and kidney pie, shepherd's pie, and bangers and mash. British cuisine has many regional

varieties within the broader categories of English, Scottish and Welsh cuisine. Each has developed its own regional or local dishes, many of which are geographically indicated foods such as Cornish pasties, the Yorkshire pudding, Cumberland Sausage, Arbroath Smokie, and Welsh cakes.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT

accentuate ( <i>v</i> )	ta'kidlamoq, urg'u bermoq	подчеркнуть, акцентировать
another helping of smth. ( <i>w.comb</i> )	qo'shimcha, ajratilgan muayyan porsiya	зд. добавка, дополнительная порция
associate ( <i>v</i> )	hamkor, hamkasb	ассоциировать
burning ( <i>n</i> )	yonayotgan	горящий
describe ( <i>v</i> )	tasvirlamoq, ifodalamoq	описывать
disguise ( <i>v</i> )	niqoblamoq	маскировать
elaborate ( <i>v</i> )	puxta, mufassal	разработать
flavor ( <i>n</i> )	maza-ta'm	вкус
cuisine ( <i>v</i> )	pishiriq	кухня
chipped potatoes ( <i>word combination</i> )	qovurilgan kartoshka	картофель фри
garlic ( <i>n</i> )	sarimsoqpiyoz	чеснок
liking ( <i>n</i> )	xush ko'rish, maza	вкус, расположение
mustard ( <i>n</i> )	xantal	горчица
oven ( <i>n</i> )	duxovka	духовка
overdone ( <i>adj</i> )	qattiq qovurilgan	пережаренный

poor ( <i>adj</i> )	faqir, kambag'al	бедный
pudding ( <i>n</i> )	desert, pudding	пудинг
specific ( <i>adj</i> )	muayyan	специфический
steak ( <i>n</i> )	steyk, bifshteks	стейк, бифштекс
stimulus ( <i>n</i> )	stimul, turtki	стимул
underdone ( <i>adj</i> )	yaxshi qovurilmagan	недожаренный
variety ( <i>n</i> )	turlilik, turfa	разнообразие, разновидность

### **SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES**

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1** Why is the British cuisine described as “unfussy”? Do you really think so?
- 2** Why was the British cuisine formed of a lot of hybrid dishes?
- 3** What did the Anglo-Saxon bring to the British cuisine?
- 4** What changes were in the British cuisine in the Middle ages?
- 5** What country’s cuisine interfered at the times of the British Empire?
- 6** How did the war of the 20<sup>th</sup> century influence on the British cuisine?
- 7** What does the traditional English cuisine include?
- 8** Does each country of UK have its own traditional cuisine?
- 9** What kind of dishes refer to different regions?
- 10** Are there Uzbek dishes that refer to different regions? Give your examples.

➤ *Read the dialogue, and then perform it.*

### **At table**

*Nick:* I say, mum, I'm as hungry as a hunter, I haven't had a thing all day.

*Mother:* you're just in time for dinner.

*Nick:* No soup for me. I'd rather have beef-steak.

*Mother:* Are you quite sure you wouldn't like some soup? It tastes all right.

*Nick:* I think there is nothing like steak and chipped potatoes. I'll go and wash my hands.

*Mother:* How's the steak? I think it's underdone.

*Nick:* Oh, it's done to a turn, just to my liking. I don't like meat overdone.

May I have another helping of chips?

*Mother:* Yes, certainly. Hand me your plate, please and help yourself to salad. Just to see how it tastes.

*Nick:* Oh, it's delicious.

*Mother:* Shall I put some mustard on your steak?

*Nick:* No, thanks. I don't care for mustard. I'd rather take a spoonful of sause.

Pass me the sause-boat, please.

*Mother:* Here you are. Nick, isn't there a smell of something burning?

*Nick:* So there is.

*Mother:* I've left the layer cake in the oven.

*Nick:* For goodness' sake, get it over quick.

# LEARNING WITH MODERN PEDAGOGICAL TECHNOLOGIES

## CONCEPTUAL TABLE

➤ *Fill in the table with the key words that match for each column*

<b>English people's character</b>	<b>Food</b>	<b>Holidays</b>

## FIVE MINUTE ESSAY

➤ *Using the information from the conceptual table above, write a five minute essay*

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

# *Famous British People*

## **William Shakespeare**



William Shakespeare, often considered the greatest writer of plays ever, was born in 1564 in the little town of Stratford-on-Avon, about 120 kilometers from London. He was the third of eight children.

When Shakespeare was 18, he married Anne Hathaway, a woman eight years older than himself. Three children were born to them.

As a young man, Shakespeare went to London to work at the theatre. He worked there for several years before he began to write his own plays.

Shakespeare soon became a well-known writer in London. He was part of one of London's most popular acting groups. His plays were often performed and published. He was considered as the most popular writer of his time. In 1599, he and some colleagues became the owners of their own theatre, the Globe Theatre.

Shakespeare wrote 37 plays that can be divided into three types: comedies, histories and tragedies. His comedies include "The Taming of the Shrew" and "A Midsummer Night's Dream". His histories told the stories of English kings, including Henry IV, Henry VIII, Richard II and Richard III. His tragedies include such well-known plays as "Romeo and Juliet", "Othello", "Macbeth", "King Lear" and "Hamlet".



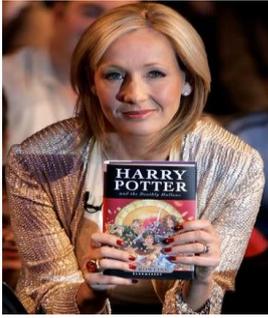
Besides plays, Shakespeare is also famous for his poetry. He wrote many poems called sonnets, which were almost always love poems. His work is some of the most often quoted love poetry in the world.

People in many countries of the world like Shakespeare's writing very much. His work has helped shape world literature and has had a great effect on the English language. That his plays are read and performed often today, hundreds of years after his death in 1616, is proof of his greatness.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

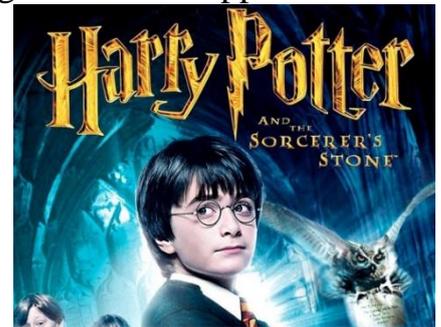
act ( <i>n, v</i> )	harakat, harakat qilmoq	действие, действовать
besides ( <i>prep., adv</i> )	boshqa, tashqari, bo'lak	кроме того, помимо
colleague ( <i>n</i> )	kollega, hamkasb	коллега
consider ( <i>v</i> )	ko'rib chiqmoq, muhokama qilmoq	рассмотреть
effect ( <i>n, v</i> )	natija, oqibat	эффект, воздействие, осуществлять
owner ( <i>n</i> )	sohib, xo'jayin, ega	владелец
perform ( <i>v</i> )	bajarmoq, ado etmoq	выполнять
poetry ( <i>n</i> )	nazm, she'riyat	поэзия
proof ( <i>n</i> )	isbot, dalil	доказательство
taming ( <i>n</i> )	bezak, zeb-ziynat	укрощение
quote ( <i>n</i> )	sitata keltirmoq, asoslamoq	цитата
several ( <i>adv</i> )	bir qancha	несколько
shape ( <i>n, v</i> )	tashqi ko'rinish, forma	форма, вид, формировать
shrew ( <i>n</i> )	qaysar, o'jar, ters	строптивая

## J.K.Rowling



Joanne "Jo" Rowling, born 31 July 1965, pen names J. K. Rowling and Robert Galbraith, is a British novelist, screenwriter and film producer best known as the author of the *Harry Potter* fantasy series. The books have gained worldwide attention, won multiple awards, and sold more than 400 million copies. They have become the best-selling book series in history and been the basis for a series of films over which Rowling had overall approval on the scripts and maintained creative control by serving as a producer on the final instalment.

Born in Yate, Gloucestershire, England, Rowling was working as a researcher and bilingual secretary for Amnesty International when she conceived the idea for the *Harry Potter* series while on a delayed train from Manchester to London in 1990. The seven-year period that followed saw the death of her mother, birth of her first child, divorce from her first husband and relative poverty until she finished the first novel in the series, *Harry Potter and the Philosopher's Stone*, in 1997. There were six sequels, the last, *Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows*, in 2007. Since then, Rowling has written four books for adult readers: *The Casual Vacancy* (2012) and—under the pseudonym Robert Galbraith—the crime fiction novels *The Cuckoo's Calling* (2013), *The Silkworm* (2014) and *Career of Evil* (2015).



Rowling has lived a "rags to riches" life story, in which she progressed from living on state benefits to multi-millionaire status within five years. She is the United Kingdom's best-selling living author, with sales in excess of £238. The 2016 *Sunday Times Rich List* estimated Rowling's fortune at £600 million, ranking her as the joint 197th richest person in the UK. *Time* magazine named her as a runner-up for its 2007 Person of the Year, noting the social, moral, and political inspiration she has given her fans. In October 2010, Rowling was named the "Most

Influential Woman in Britain" by leading magazine editors. She has supported charities including Comic Relief, One Parent Families, Multiple Sclerosis Society of Great Britain and Lumos (formerly the Children's High Level Group).

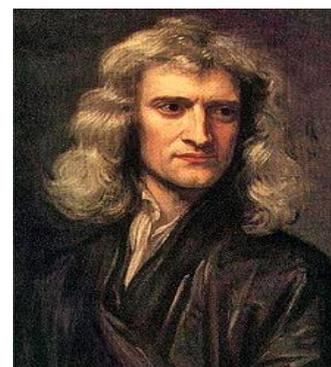
### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

benefit ( <i>n</i> )	biror narsaning yaxshi tarafi	благо
career ( <i>n</i> )	martaba	карьер
charity ( <i>n</i> )	xayriya tashkiloti	благотворительность
divorce ( <i>n, v</i> )	nikohdan ajralish	развод
editor ( <i>n</i> )	muharrir	редактор
inspiration ( <i>n</i> )	ilhombaxsh	вдохновение
magazine ( <i>n</i> )	jurnal	журнал
moral ( <i>n</i> )	axloqiy	этика, мораль
novelist ( <i>n</i> )	yozuvchi	писатель-романист
producer ( <i>n</i> )	prodyuser	продюсер
pseudonym ( <i>n</i> )	taxallus	псевдоним
rich ( <i>n</i> )	boylik, farovonlik	богатство
screenwriter ( <i>n</i> )	ssenarist	сценарист

## Isaac Newton

Newton, one of the greatest scientists of all times was born on 25th of December, 1642 at the little village of Woolstrophe in Lincolnshire. His father was a farmer and had died before Newton was born.

Newton studied mathematics at Cambridge and took



his degree there in 1665. Then the University was closed because of the danger of plague, and Newton went home for a period of eighteen months, which was a most important period, for during that time Newton, between the ages of 22 and 24, made his three great discoveries: the discovery of the differential calculus, of the nature of white light, and of the law of gravitation. Those three great discoveries, which changed the course of thought, have also influenced the course of science from that day until our days.

It is interesting how the idea which led to the discovery of the laws governing the forces of gravitation first came to him. Once, as he sat in his garden the fall of the apple made him think: why must that apple always descend perpendicularly on the ground. Why must it not go side wards or upwards, but usually to the earth's center.

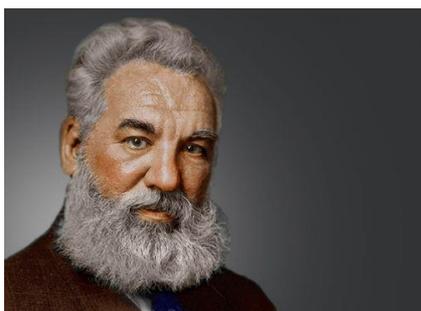
Certainly, the reason is that the earth draws it. Later he began to apply this property of gravitation to the motion of the earth and the heavenly bodies round the sun. Newton died when he was 84 and buried in Westminster Abbey where his monument is today.

#### **ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:**

calculus ( <i>n</i> )	hisob, differensial hisoblash	дифференциальное вычисление
certainly ( <i>adv</i> )	shubhasiz	конечно
descend ( <i>n, v</i> )	pasaymoq, pastga tushmoq	спускаться
die ( <i>v</i> )	o'lmog, vafot etmoq	умереть
force ( <i>n</i> )	kuch	силу
monument ( <i>n</i> )	haykal	памятник
motion ( <i>n</i> )	harakatlanish, yurish	движения

plague ( <i>n</i> )	o‘lat	чума
property ( <i>n</i> )	mol-mulk	собственность
side ( <i>n</i> )	taraf, tomon	стороны
upwards ( <i>adv</i> )	yuqoriga tepaga	вверх

## Alexander Graham Bell



**Alexander Graham Bell** (March 3, 1847 – August 2, 1922) was a Scottish-born scientist, inventor, engineer, and innovator who is credited with patenting the first practical telephone.

Bell's father, grandfather, and brother had all been associated with work on elocution and speech and both his mother and wife were deaf, profoundly influencing Bell's life's work. His research on hearing and speech further led him to experiment with hearing devices, which eventually culminated in Bell being awarded the first U.S. patent for the telephone in 1876. Bell considered his most famous invention an intrusion on his real work as a scientist and refused to have a telephone in his study.

Many other inventions marked Bell's later life, including groundbreaking work in optical telecommunications, hydrofoils, and aeronautics. Although Bell was not one of the 33 founders of the National Geographic Society, he had a strong influence on the magazine while serving as the second president from January 7, 1898, until 190

From his early years, Bell showed a sensitive nature and a talent for art, poetry, and music that was encouraged by his mother. With no formal training, he mastered the piano and became the family's pianist. Despite being normally quiet and introspective, he reveled in mimicry and "voice tricks" akin to ventriloquism that continually entertained family guests during their occasional



visits. Bell was also deeply affected by his mother's gradual deafness (she began to lose her hearing when he was 12), and learned a manual finger language so he could sit at her side and tap out silently the conversations swirling around the family parlour. He also developed a technique of speaking in clear, modulated tones directly into his mother's forehead wherein she would hear him with reasonable clarity. Bell's preoccupation with his mother's deafness led him to study acoustics.

His family was long associated with the teaching of elocution: his grandfather, Alexander Bell, in London, his uncle in Dublin, and his father, in Edinburgh, were all elocutionists. His father published a variety of works on the subject, several of which are still well known, especially his *The Standard Elocutionist* (1860), which appeared in Edinburgh in 1868. *The Standard Elocutionist* appeared in 168 British editions and sold over a quarter of a million copies in the United States alone. In this treatise, his father explains his methods of how to instruct deaf-mutes (as they were then known) to articulate words and read other people's lip movements to decipher meaning. Bell's father taught him and his brothers not only to write Visible Speech but to identify any symbol and its accompanying sound. Bell became so proficient that he became a part of his father's public demonstrations and astounded audiences with his abilities. He could decipher Visible Speech representing virtually every language, including Latin, Scottish Gaelic, and even Sanskrit, accurately reciting written tracts without any prior knowledge of their pronunciation.

#### **ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:**

accurate ( <i>adj</i> )	aniq, to‘g‘ri	точный, аккуратный
astound ( <i>v</i> )	hayratda qoldirmoq	поражать, изумлять
audience ( <i>n</i> )	tomoshabin, tinglovchi	аудитория,

		аудиенция
decipher (v)	rasshifrovka qilmoq	расшифровать
demonstration (n)	namoyish, isbot, dalil	демонстрация
parlour (n)	mehmonxona, umumiy xona	приёмная, салон
prior (adv)	oldin, avval, asosiy	до, главный
pronunciation (n)	talaffuz	произношение
recite (v)	yoddan aytmoq	читать вслух, повторять по памяти
scientist (n)	olim	ученый
swirl (n)	aylanmoq, girdob	завихрение
treat (v)	talqin etmoq	лечить
virtual (adj)	haqiqiy, chin	виртуальный
ventriloquist (n)	labini qimirlatmasdan gapira oladigan kishi	чревовещатель

### **SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:**

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 When and where did W.Shakespeare born?
- 2 When did Shakespeare become the owner of his own “Globe” theatre?
- 3 What works of Shakespeare are the most popular?
- 4 Which of them have you ever read?
- 5 What book was J.K.Rowling become famous for?
- 6 How did the idea of writing a series book of Harry Potter come to the

author?

- 7 How did Rowling's writing career influence on her life financially?
- 8 At what age did Newton make his three great discoveries? How did the idea of the gravitation come to his mind?
- 9 What is the greatest discovery of A.G.Bell? How did he come to this discovery?
- 10 What was the impact of Bell's engagement in the study of acoustics? What is a distinguishing profession the Bells family had?

➤ *Fill in the suitable word from the box*

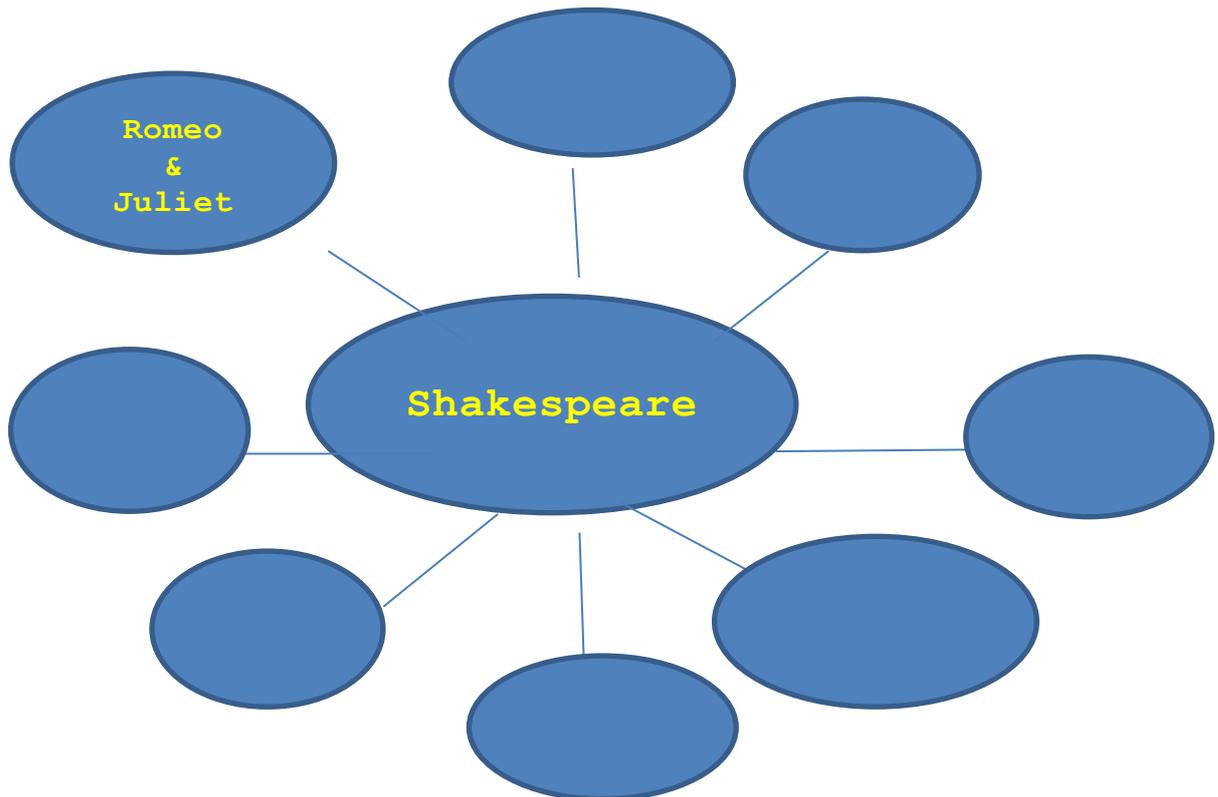
<b>aeronautics</b>	<b>decipher</b>	<b>acoustics</b>	<b>virtually</b>	<b>draw</b>
<b>best selling</b>	<b>elocutionist</b>	<b>introspective</b>	<b>hydrofoils</b>	<b>motion</b>

- 1 The gravitation of the Earth depend on the \_\_\_\_\_ of heavenly bodies and the sun round the earth.
- 2 Nowadays, A.Navoiy's works are considered as the \_\_\_\_\_ books among youth of Uzbekistan.
- 3 A lot people have communication \_\_\_\_\_ using internet mobile phones, and other devices.
- 4 The Earth \_\_\_\_\_ all the bodies because of the force of gravitation.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ is the area related with perception and reception of sounds.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ can help to decipher the meaning of the words with the movements of lips movement.
- 7 An \_\_\_\_\_ person is able to analyse his ideas individually.
- 8 Bell's telephone invention is significant in such specific spheres as \_\_\_\_\_ and aeronautics.

- 9 Can you find out the \_\_\_\_\_ of this abbreviation? I don't know it.
- 10 Since childhood my son has been interested in \_\_\_\_\_.

**BRAINSTORMING**

➤ The students are divided into four groups and each group thinks of as many of that person's works as possible



**FIVE MINUTE ESSAY**

Each member of the group should tell briefly about the gist of each work, then the group should choose one of the novels and give as a task to the next group to write five minute essay

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

# *Science, education, and sport*

## **Science in the UK**

Well over 70 UK citizens have been awarded the Nobel Prize for science, more than any country apart from the United States. In 2002, two Britons (Sydney Brenner and Sir John Sulston) were awarded the Prize for showing how genes control development both of disease and of organs. In 2003 Sir Peter



Mansfield received the prize for pioneering work on MRI (magnetic resonance imaging), enabling non-invasive imaging of all the body's organs. In both cases an American scientist shared the prize.

Increasingly science crosses international borders. Harvard University and the University of Cambridge are the universities that have won the most Nobel prizes in the world: in late 2004 they announced a joint project which foreshadows a gene-based therapy for treating the damage caused by multiple sclerosis. Again, scientists from the UK Hadley Centre, and the Centre for Global Atmospheric, Modeling are working with the Japanese Earth Simulator Supercomputer to predict climate change. After a seven-year flight to Saturn, the Cassini orbiter an American-European Italian project is sending us close-up images of Saturn, it's Huygens probe landed on Titan, the second largest moon in the solar system, believed to have geophysical processes like that of earth. UK scientists are heavily involved in 8 of the 18 instruments on the board Cassini-Huygens.

The biotechnology sector is the largest in Europe and second only to the USA. Life science work includes the Human Genome Project and the UK stem Cell Initiative. In 2003, the world celebrated fifty years since the discovery of

the double helix structure of DNA in the UK by scientists James Watson and Francis Crick.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

apart ( <i>adv</i> )	alohida	отдельно, кроме
announce ( <i>v</i> )	eʻlon qilmoq	объявлять
award ( <i>n, v</i> )	mukofot	премия, награда, награждать
border ( <i>n, v</i> )	chegara	рубеж, граница, граничиться
believe ( <i>v</i> )	ishonmoq	верить
foreshadow ( <i>v</i> )	oldindan xabar bermoq	предвещать
citizen ( <i>n</i> )	fuqaro	гражданин
climate ( <i>n</i> )	iqlim	климат
control ( <i>n, v</i> )	boshqaruv	управление, контроль, контролировать
cross ( <i>v</i> )	kesib oʻtmoq	пересекать
enable ( <i>v</i> )	huquq bermoq	давать возможность
involve ( <i>v</i> )	qatnashgan	вовлекать, включать
increase ( <i>v</i> )	koʻraymoq	увеличение, увеличиваться
project ( <i>n, v</i> )	loyiha	проект

probe ( <i>n, v</i> )	tergov	следствие, расследовать
pioneer ( <i>n, v</i> )	kashshof	первопроходец, инициатор, предшествовать
therapy ( <i>n</i> )	muolaja	лечение, терапия

## *The Nobel Prize*



*The Nobel Prize is a set of annual international awards bestowed in a number of categories by Swedish and Norwegian institutions in recognition of academic, cultural, or scientific advances.*

*The will of the Swedish inventor Alfred Nobel established the prizes in 1895. The prizes in Chemistry, Literature, Peace, Physics, and Physiology or Medicine were first awarded in 1901. Medals made before 1980 were struck in 23-carat gold, and later from 18-carat green gold plated with a 24 carat gold coating. Between 1901 and 2016, the Nobel Prizes and the Prize in Economic Sciences were awarded 579 times to 911 people and organizations. With some receiving the Nobel Prize more than once, this makes a total of 23 organizations, and 881 individuals.*

*The prize ceremonies take place annually in Stockholm, Sweden (with the exception of the peace prize, which is held in Oslo, Norway). Each recipient, or laureate, receives a gold medal, a diploma, and a sum of money that has been decided by the Nobel Foundation. (As of 2012, each prize was worth SEK 8 million or about US\$1.2 million, €0.93 million, or £0.6 million.) The Nobel Prize is widely regarded as the most prestigious award available in the fields of literature, medicine, physics, chemistry, peace, as is the Prize in Economic Sciences.*

*The Royal Swedish Academy of Sciences awards the Nobel Prize in Physics, the Nobel Prize in Chemistry, and the Sveriges Riksbank Prize in Economic Sciences in Memory of Alfred Nobel; the Nobel Assembly at Karolinska Institutet awards the Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine; the Swedish Academy grants the Nobel Prize in*

*Literature; and the Nobel Peace Prize is awarded not by a Swedish organization but by the Norwegian Nobel Committee.*

*The prize is not awarded posthumously; however, if a person is awarded a prize and dies before receiving it, the prize may still be presented. Though the average number of laureates per prize increased substantially during the 20th century, a prize may not be shared among more than three people.*

### **ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:**

annual	yillik	годовой
advance ( <i>n, adj, v</i> )	rivojlanmoq	продвижение, предварительный, продвигаться
award ( <i>n, v</i> )	taqdirlamoq	награда
die ( <i>v</i> )	kuchsizlanmoq	умереть
during ( <i>prep</i> )	vaqtida	в течение
substantial ( <i>adj</i> )	katta, buyuk	существенный
exception ( <i>n</i> )	istisno	исключение
still ( <i>adv</i> )	hozirgacha	все еще, неподвижный
medicine ( <i>n</i> )	tibbiyot	лекарственное средство
regard ( <i>v</i> )	tomosha qilmoq	рассматривать, считать, относиться
receive ( <i>v</i> )	olmoq	получать, принимать
total ( <i>adj</i> )	umumiy	всего, общий
wide ( <i>adj</i> )	keng	широкий

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:

➤ *Discuss the following questions.*

- 1 What is the most distinguishing achievement of the UK's science apart from other countries?
- 2 Which universities in the world won the most Noble prizes?
- 3 What kind of scientific project was announced in 2004?
- 4 What kind of joint project has been done in the field of climate change?
- 5 Which planet is believed to have geophysical processes like that of earth?
- 6 What was James Watson's and Francis Crick's contribution in science?
- 7 What kind of prize is the Noble Prize?
- 8 What is the prize given for? When was it given first?
- 9 Where do the prize ceremonies take place? What does each laureate receive?
- 10 Which sciences does the Royal Swedish Academy award the Noble Prize? James Watson and Francis Crick? The Swedish Academy? Norwegian Nobel Committee?

➤ *Fill in the suitable word from the box*

<b>apart from</b>	<b>foreshadow</b>	<b>disease</b>	<b>double helix</b>	<b>prestigious</b>
<b>predict</b>	<b>enable</b>	<b>plate</b>	<b>regard</b>	<b>bestow</b>

- 1 This ring \_\_\_\_\_ with plutonium, that's why it is very expensive

- 2 In science to \_\_\_\_\_ some phenomena should be based on theories and hypothesis.
- 3 For many years there was not a cure for such \_\_\_\_\_ cancer, malaria, polyarthritis and other \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Knowledge of English and IT skills \_\_\_\_\_you career growth.
- 5 You should \_\_\_\_\_this question to a dean of the faculty.
- 6 All the tasks should be in written form, \_\_\_\_\_the last one, that should be done orally.
- 7 This university is one of the \_\_\_\_\_in our country.
- 8 This summer \_\_\_\_\_ very hot days that may lead to draught.
- 9 Scientists James Watson and Francis Crick discovered the \_\_\_\_\_structure of DNA.
- 10 If you work hard at the field you have chosen, you will be \_\_\_\_\_by life's best award, rather by the results of your work.

## Education of the UK



The United Nations Human Development Index includes a measure of time spent in primary, secondary and tertiary education. This shows the UK as joint second with Australia world-wide, Sweden being top.

Full-time education in the UK is compulsory between 5 (4 in Northern Ireland) and 16. In addition, pre-school education is available for all 3 and 4 year old, and three quarters of 16 years olds go on further education.

As recently as 1989 only one six went on to degree-level education: the current level is double that, one three, and the target for 2010 even higher, one in two.



World-wide comparative studies show UK students as near the top in education results on most scales. Nevertheless, the UK government regards ever better standards as vital and has unleashed a barrage of initiatives. Classes are smaller, students are assessed from age 7, then take national examinations starting at around age 16. School achievements are published. ICT (information and communications technology) is a basic tool: virtually all secondary schools have broad-band access.

Some 6% of secondary students attend fee-paying independent schools, the rest state schools: here there is a wide choice. Some schools select by ability, although most (comprehensive schools) draw students of all abilities from the local area. Many, while teaching the required basic subjects, also specialize for example, on technology, science or languages. Academies independent schools but publicly funded also have considerable participation by sponsors in industry, faith groups, or the voluntary sector.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT

addition ( <i>n</i> )	qo'shish	дополнение, прибавление
assess ( <i>v</i> )	baholamoq	оценивать
between ( <i>prep, adv.</i> )	orasida	внутри, между
broad-band ( <i>word combination</i> )	keng qamrovli, keng diapazonda	широкополосный, в широком диапазоне

choice ( <i>n</i> )	tanlov	выбор
degree-level education ( <i>w.comb</i> )	oliy ta'lim	высшее образование (дипломное)
full-time education ( <i>w.comb</i> )	kunduzgi ta'lim shakli	очная форма обучения
further ( <i>adj, adv</i> )	olisroq	дальнейший
current ( <i>adj</i> )	hozirgi	нынешний
secondary education ( <i>w.comb</i> )	o'rta ta'lim	среднее образование
scales ( <i>n</i> )	tarozi	весы
unleash ( <i>v</i> )	yechmoq, yo'l ochmoq, erkinlik bermoq	развязать, давать волю
jointly ( <i>adv</i> )	umumiy	общий, совместно
pre-school education ( <i>w.comb</i> )	maktabgacha ta'lim	дошкольное образование
primary ( <i>adj</i> )	asosiy, boshlang'ich	основной, первоначальный
primary education ( <i>w.comb</i> )	boshlang'ich ta'lim	начальное образование
tertiary education ( <i>w.comb</i> )	oliy ta'lim	высшее образование

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

1 What kind of research does the United Nations Human Development

Index carry out?

- 2 What are the stages of UK education system?
- 3 How has the rate of degree level education changed since 1989?
- 4 Do you agree with the fact that UK students are near the top in education results? In your opinion, what is the reason of it?
- 5 What age does the primary education start?
- 6 When do the students take their national exam?
- 7 What do you think, where the school results are published?
- 8 What percentage of students goes to fee-paying schools?
- 9 How do the schools in UK select the students for admission?
- 10 Can the schools in UK be sponsored?

➤ *Decide if the statements are TRUE or FALSE*

1	Students in UK spend less time on education in comparison with Australia and Sweden?	
2	Students in UK must get education between the ages of 5 (4 in Ireland) and 16	
3	The rank of students who intend to receive a degree has sharply raised during ten years.	
4	The education results of the UK is as high as in other countries.	
5	Today, the number of students in classes is smaller in UK.	
6	The examination results are hardly available in spite of the assessment the students upon the completion of their studies.	
7	Students have an access to ICT and effectively use them in their studies.	

8	There are two types of schools in UK: private and state.	
9	Most of the schools in UK are specialized in particular subjects such as languages, science or technology.	
10	The state institutions in UK are hardly ever sponsored by government or by other sectors.	

## The University of Oxford

*As the oldest university in the English-speaking world, Oxford is a unique and historic institution. There is no clear date of foundation, but teaching existed at Oxford in some form in 1096 and developed rapidly from 1167, when Henry II banned English students from attending the University of Paris.*



In 1188, the historian, Gerald of Wales, gave a public reading to the assembled Oxford dons<sup>10</sup> and in around 1190, the arrival of Emo of Friesland, the first known overseas student, set in motion the University's tradition of international scholarly links. By 1201, the University was headed by a *magister scholarum Oxonie*, on whom the title of Chancellor was conferred in 1214, and in 1231 the masters were recognised as a *universitas* or corporation.

In the 13th century, rioting between town and gown (townspeople and students) hastened the establishment of primitive halls of residence. These were succeeded by the first of Oxford's colleges, which began as medieval 'halls of residence' or endowed houses under the supervision of a Master. University,

---

<sup>10</sup> Don – title of lecturer at Oxford or Cambridge university

Balliol and Merton Colleges, which were established between 1249 and 1264, are the oldest.

Less than a century later, Oxford had achieved eminence above every other seat of learning, and won the praises of popes, kings and sages by virtue of its antiquity, curriculum, doctrine and privileges. In 1355, Edward III paid tribute to the University for its invaluable contribution to learning; he also commented on the services rendered to the state by distinguished Oxford graduates.

From its early days, Oxford was a centre for lively controversy, with scholars involved in religious and political disputes. John Wyclif, a 14th-century Master of Balliol, campaigned for a Bible in the vernacular, against the wishes of the papacy. In 1530, Henry VIII forced the University to accept his divorce from Catherine of Aragon, and during the Reformation in the 16th century, the Anglican churchmen Cranmer, Latimer and Ridley were tried for heresy and burnt at the stake in Oxford.

The University was Royalist in the Civil War, and Charles I held a counter-Parliament in Convocation House. In the late of the 17th century, the Oxford philosopher John Locke, suspected of treason, was forced to flee the country.

The 18th century, when Oxford was said to have forsaken port for politics, was also an era of scientific discovery and religious revival. Edmund Halley, Professor of Geometry, predicted the return of the comet that bears his name; John and Charles Wesley's prayer meetings laid the foundations of the Methodist Society.

The University assumed a leading role in the Victorian era, especially in religious controversy. From 1833 onwards The Oxford Movement sought to revitalise the Catholic aspects of the Anglican Church. One of its leaders, John Henry Newman, became a Roman Catholic in 1845 and was later made a Cardinal. In 1860 the new University Museum was the scene of a famous debate between Thomas Huxley, champion of evolution, and Bishop Wilberforce.

From 1878, academic halls were established for women and they were admitted to full membership of the University in 1920. Five all-male colleges first

admitted women in 1974 and, since then, all colleges have changed their statutes to admit both women and men. St Hilda's College, which was originally for women only, was the last of Oxford's single sex colleges. It has admitted both men and women since 2008.

During the 20th and early 21st centuries, Oxford added to its humanistic core a major new research capacity in the natural and applied sciences, including medicine. In so doing, it has enhanced and strengthened its traditional role as an international focus for learning and a forum for intellectual debate.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

attend ( <i>v</i> )	bormoq	посещать
assume ( <i>v</i> )	ko‘zlamoq	предполагать
ban ( <i>n, v</i> )	taqiq, man etmoq	запрет, запрещать
Confer ( <i>v</i> )	kengashmoq	совещаться
controversy ( <i>n</i> )	munozara	дискуссия, спор
foundation ( <i>n</i> )	asos, fakt	фонд, обоснованность
Heresy ( <i>n</i> )	bid’at, adashish	ересь, заблуждение
evolution ( <i>n</i> )	evolutsiya, tadrijiy rivojlanish	ЭВОЛЮЦИЯ
praise ( <i>n, v</i> )	hamd-u sano, ortiqcha maqtoq	хвала, превозносить
religious ( <i>adj</i> )	diniy	религиозный
role ( <i>n</i> )	rol	роль
motion ( <i>n</i> )	harakatlanish	движение
riot ( <i>n</i> )	isyon	мятеж

rapid ( <i>adv</i> )	tez	скоростной, крутой
unique ( <i>adj</i> )	yagona, tanho	уникальный
Virtue ( <i>n</i> )	ezgu ish	добродетель

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 When did Oxford university approximately begin to be established?
- 2 Who was the University governed by 1201?
- 3 What caused the first establishment of halls of residence and what were the first colleges?
- 4 When did Oxford won its reputation among popes, kings and sages?
- 5 What was Oxford especially famous for in the 13<sup>th</sup> century?
- 6 How was the life of Oxford and Oxford university between 14<sup>th</sup> and 17<sup>th</sup> centuries?
- 7 Why did the university and the religion have always controversion?
- 8 What was the most important discovery of Oxford university in the 18<sup>th</sup> century?
- 9 What was the religious controversy in the Victorian era?
- 10 Since when did the university start to admit both women and men?

## The University of Cambridge

*The University of Cambridge was founded in the twelfth century and before the beginning of the thirteenth it was almost a recognized centre of education. The University was formed on the model of European continental Universities. At first, lectures and oral examinations were conducted in Latin. There were no written examinations. Until the fifteenth century the history of Cambridge was not as significant as that of Oxford. But by the end of the seventeenth century the University was the home of Sir Isaac Newton — professor of mathematics from 1669 till 1702 whose influence was deep and permanent. At that time, serious tests were offered to the candidates for degrees. During the early part of the nineteenth century examinations were greatly improved and written examinations were more often used than oral.*

*The Cavendish Laboratory organized by the well-known Scottish mathematician and physicist Maxwell was opened in 1871. It was named after the English scientist of the 18th century Sir Henry Cavendish. Now it is one of the greatest physical laboratories known throughout the world.*



The University of Cambridge (informally Cambridge University) is a collegiate public research university in Cambridge, England, often regarded as one of the most prestigious universities in the world. Founded in 1209 and given royal charter status by King Henry III in 1231, Cambridge is the second-oldest university in the English-speaking world and the world's third-oldest surviving university. The university grew out of an association of scholars who left the University of Oxford after a dispute with the towns people. The two ancient universities share many common features and are often referred to jointly as "Oxbridge".

Cambridge is formed from a variety of institutions which include 31 constituent colleges and over 100 academic departments organised into six schools. Cambridge University Press, a department of the university, is the world's oldest publishing house and the second-largest university press in the world. The university also operates eight cultural and scientific museums, including the Fitzwilliam Museum, and a botanic garden. Cambridge's libraries hold a total of around 15 million books, eight million of which are in Cambridge University Library, a legal deposit library.

In the year ended 31 July 2015, the university had a total income of £1.64 billion, of which £398 million was from research grants and contracts. The central university and colleges have a combined endowment of around £5.89 billion, the largest of any university outside the United States. The university is closely linked with the development of the high-tech business cluster known as "Silicon Fen". It is a member of numerous associations and forms part of the "golden triangle" of leading English universities and Cambridge University Health Partners, an academic health science centre.

As of 2017, Cambridge is ranked the world's fourth best university by three ranking tables and no other institution in the world ranks in the top 10 for as many subjects. Cambridge is consistently ranked as the top university in the United Kingdom. The university has educated many notable alumni, including eminent mathematicians, scientists, politicians, lawyers, philosophers, writers, actors, and foreign Heads of State. Ninety-five Nobel laureates, fifteen British prime ministers and ten Fields medalists have been affiliated with Cambridge as students, faculty, or alumni.

#### **ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:**

almost ( <i>adv</i> )	deyarli	почти
alumni ( <i>n</i> )	bitiruvchilar	выпускники

deep ( <i>adj</i> )	chuqur	яма
eminent ( <i>adj</i> )	mashhur	известный
consistent ( <i>adj</i> )	barqaror	устойчивый
found ( <i>v</i> )	asoslanmoq	основываться
permanent ( <i>adj</i> )	doimiy	вечный
rank ( <i>n, v</i> )	toifa, daraja, tasniflash	категория, степень, классифицировать
recognize ( <i>v</i> )	tanimoq	признавать
significant ( <i>adj</i> )	muhim	значительный

### **SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:**

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 When was Cambridge university found and given royal charter status?
- 2 What language did the university conduct?
- 3 What periods did Sir Isaac Newton study at Cambridge university?
- 4 What was the contribution of Scottish mathematician and physicist Maxwell to Cambridge university?
- 5 When was the laboratory in physics held? Who was it named after?
- 6 Why is the university often called Oxfridge?
- 7 What is Cambridge university formed from?
- 8 What can the university boast with?
- 9 Do you know why the university is called Cambridge university?

**10** Would you like to study or exchange experience or at least have a short visit at Oxford or Cambridge universities?

➤ *Decide if the statements are TRUE or FALSE*

<b>1</b>	The Cavendish Laboratory organized by the well-known Scottish mathematician and physicist Maxwell and was named after him.	
<b>2</b>	62 years later after the foundation, Cambridge university was endowed the royal charter ctatus by king Henry III.	
<b>3</b>	Cambridge university is the next university after Oxford in UK and the third oldest university that remained from ancient times.	
<b>4</b>	Cambridge University Press has still been operating up to nowadays.	
<b>5</b>	Cambridge University Library keeps more than half number of the books of the all libraries in Cambridge.	
<b>6</b>	Research grants and contracts make up one third of the total income of the university.	
<b>7</b>	No other institution in the world ranks in the top 10 for as many subjects as Cambridge university.	
<b>8</b>	Cambridge is always ranked as the top university in the United Kingdom.	
<b>9</b>	In 2017, Cambridge university was ranked as the fourth top university in the United Kingdom.	
<b>10</b>	Most eminent people of Britain were graduators from Cambridge university.	



## Sport in UK – Games that England gave the world

*The United Kingdom has given birth to a range of major international sports including: association football, rugby (union and league), cricket, netball, darts, golf, tennis, table tennis, badminton, squash, bowls, modern rowing, hockey, ice, hockey, boxing, snooker, billiards, and curling. Great Britain hosted a number of world Olympic Games.*

Most people in Great Britain are real sport-lovers. Even if they don't go in for sport, they like to talk about it. Many kinds of sport have taken the origin in Great Britain: cricket, football, rugby, tennis, table tennis, badminton, squash, canoeing and snooker.

Britain's national sport is football or soccer. It was played there as far back as medieval times. Nowadays it has become the most popular game all over the world. There is no national football team in Great Britain. England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland have their separate football clubs, which compete in European and World Cup matches.



English football fans are fond of most exciting games which are held between teams from the same city. For example, between Manchester United and Manchester City, Arsenal and Chelsea from London.

There are plenty of amateur association football clubs. Many schools form their own football teams, offering students an opportunity of entering prestigious universities according to their sport achievements.

There is a certain type of football called rugby. The game is called so because it was originated at Rugby — a well-known English public school. As well as common football it is a game played by two teams of fifteen players each. The game takes place on a field 100 metres long and 80 metres wide. There



are goal posts at both ends of the field. Rugby is played with an oval or egg-shaped ball which can be carried by hands and kicked. The ball is passed from hand to hand in order to be thrown across the goal line. It is a rather violent game, that is why the players must be big and strong. Another requirement for the players is to wear helmets, masks and chest and shoulder padding.

Cricket is a popular summer sport in Britain. There are many cricket clubs in the country. Cricket players wear a certain uniform — white boots, a white T-shirt and white trousers. One cricket game takes a terribly long time. There are two teams of 11 players each and test matches between national teams can last up to 5 days. The spectators have to be very patient. The game is played on a pitch with a wicket at each end. The rules of the game have changed over the years. It is a game which is associated with long sunny summer afternoons, the smell of new-mown grass and the sound of leather ball beating the willow cricket bat. Cricket is more popular among men, but it is also played by women and girls.

Tennis is another favourite sport of the Englishmen. People all over the world know Wimbledon, which is the centre of lawn tennis. It is the oldest tennis tournament in the world considered by many people to be the most prestigious. It takes place over two weeks in late June and early July. Wimbledon is known for its traditions — strict white dress code for competitors, the absence of sponsor advertising around the courts and some others. Every tennis player dreams of taking part at this tournament.



Golf is a game of business community. In Great Britain it is very common to establish good business relations playing golf. The equipment for this game is quite expensive as well as the entrance to a prestigious golf club, so not everyone can afford it.

Golf is a ball and golf stick game played on a natural field. In this game one has to knock a ball into a hole.

There are a lot of other popular sports in Great Britain, for example, horseracing, croquet, swimming, running, cycling and rowing.

## ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

amateur ( <i>n</i> )	havaskor	любитель
cricket ( <i>n</i> )	kriket	крикет
dart ( <i>n</i> )	nayza	бросок, метание
Equipment ( <i>n</i> )	jihaz	оборудование
kick ( <i>n, v</i> )	tepki	удар ногой, копыто, пинок
new-mown grass ( <i>w.comb</i> )	yangi o‘rilgan o‘tloq joyi	свежескошенная трава
origin ( <i>n, v</i> )	negiz, asos	источник, происхождение
sound ( <i>v</i> )	ko‘rinmoq	звук, видимый
snooker ( <i>n</i> )	bilyard	бильярд
strict ( <i>adj</i> )	talabchan	требовательный
it takes place ( <i>w.comb</i> )	mansub bo‘lmoq	происходить

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 Which sports originated in Britain?
- 2 Which sport do you associate with Britain? Why?
- 3 What sports have taken the origin in Britain?
- 4 Do you know any English football clubs?
- 5 What is rugby?
- 6 What equipment do you need to play rugby?

- 7 Cricket is a popular winter sport in England, isn't it?
- 8 Have you learnt any interesting information about cricket?
- 9 Why does every tennis player dream of taking part at Wimbledon?
- 10 Do you think golf is an exciting game?

➤ Match the definition in the first column with the type of sport

<b>1</b>	<b>BOXING</b>	<b>a</b>	is a bat-and-ball game played between two teams of eleven players on field, at the centre of which is a rectangular 22-yard-long pitch with a wicket (a set of three wooden stumps) at each end. One team bats, attempting to score as many runs as possible, whilst their opponents field. Each phase of play is called an innings.
<b>2</b>	<b>RUGBY</b>	<b>b</b>	is a club and ball sport in which players use various clubs to hit balls into a series of holes on a course in as few strokes as possible. Unlike most ball games, it cannot and does not utilize a standardized playing area. The game is played on a course with an arranged progression of 18 holes.
<b>3</b>	<b>CRICKET</b>	<b>c</b>	is a racket sport that can be played individually against a single opponent (singles) or between two teams of two players each (doubles). Each player uses a tennis racket that is strung with cord to strike a hollow rubber ball covered with felt over or around a net and into the opponent's court.
<b>4</b>	<b>SQUASH</b>	<b>d</b>	is a type of football, one of many versions of football played at English public schools in the 19th century.
<b>5</b>	<b>DARTS</b>	<b>e</b>	also known as “Cue sports”, are a wide variety of games of skill generally played with a cue stick which is used to strike balls, moving them around a cloth-covered table bounded by

			rubber cushions.
<b>6</b>	<b>GOLF</b>	<b>f</b>	also known as ping pong, is a sport in which two or four players hit a lightweight ball back and forth across a table using a small bat. The game takes place on a hard table divided by a net.
<b>7</b>	<b>TENNIS</b>	<b>g</b>	is a form of throwing sport in which small missiles are thrown at a circular dartboard fixed to a wall. Though various boards and rules have been used in the past, the term "darts" usually now refers to a standardised game involving a specific board design and set of rules. It is also a traditional pub game, commonly played in Britain and Ireland, across the Commonwealth, the Netherlands, Germany, the Scandinavian countries, the United States, and elsewhere.
<b>8</b>	<b>TABLE TENNIS</b>	<b>h</b>	is a racquet sport played using racquets to hit a shuttlecock across a net. Although it may be played with larger teams, the most common forms of the game are "singles" (with one player per side) and "doubles" (with two players per side). It is often played as a casual outdoor activity in a yard or on a beach; formal games are played on a rectangular indoor court.
<b>9</b>	<b>BADMINTON</b>	<b>i</b>	is supervised by a referee over a series of one-to three-minute intervals called rounds. The result is decided when an opponent is deemed incapable to continue by a referee, is disqualified for breaking a rule, resigns by throwing in a towel, or is pronounced the winner or loser based on the judges' scorecards at the end of the contest.
<b>10</b>	<b>BILLIARDS</b>	<b>j</b>	is a racket sport played by two (singles) or four players (doubles) in a four-walled court with a small, hollow rubber ball. The players must alternate in striking the ball with their racket and hit the ball onto the playable surfaces of the four walls of the court.

## ***Football? Soccer? Rugby?***

*Soccer (Football) is played between 11 players on a field and includes a spherical ball. The game consists of two halves of 45 minutes each, and does not include timeouts. The referee is the enforcer and the time keeper of the match and it is his responsibility to oversee that the match is played fair. Soccer has 17 Laws that govern the sport. The game is played only using feet, legs, head and torso. No player, with the exception of the goal keeper, may touch the ball with their hands during game play. The goal keeper's job is to protect the goal net. The main objective of the game is score points by driving the ball in the opposing team's net. The team with the most scores at the end of the game wins.*

*The game play starts with a coin-toss, to determine which team will play offence and the other defense. If the ball goes out of play, the field players are required to restart the game by throwing-in the ball. If the game is a draw, extra-time or penalty shoot out depending on the format of the competition will determine the final score. Other than kicking or blocking the ball, no other contact is allowed.*

*Rugby football consists of two halves of 40 minutes each and does not include any time outs. The referee may however, keep time and stop time during substitutions or injuries. A rugby team in union is allowed to have 15 players on the field at the time of play. The match begins with the kickoff and the teams fight for the possession of the ball. The team that receives the ball can run with it, kick it or pass it backwards. The opponent can tackle the ball carrier anytime during the game. The objective of the game is to earn points by touching the ball the opposing team's goal line or kicking it through the opposing team's goal post.*

*In Rugby (Union) a try is worth 5 points and the players are divided into forwards and backs. Forwards are usually larger and stronger people whose jobs is to possess the ball, while the backs are generally smaller and faster and their jobs is to exploit ball positions. The players can play in offence and defense according to the requirement of the game. The ball has to be passed either sideways or backwards, while kicking is allowed in any direction. Other than tackles, scrummages, rucks, mauls, and lineouts, no other contact is allowed.*

*In soccer, a player may not touch the ball when the game is in play, with the exception of the goalie. In Rugby a player is required to touch and carry the ball. The ball differs in both games as well. In Rugby, the ball is prolate spheroid shaped, while in soccer the ball is spherical. Soccer allows 11 players on a field, while Rugby allows 15. Scoring is different as well in both games, while Rugby allows players to score points using different methods, soccer only awards points when a goal is made.*

## ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

different ( <i>adj</i> )	farqli	отличающийся
defense ( <i>n</i> )	himoya	защита
extra-time	qo‘shimcha vaqt	дополнительное время
field ( <i>n</i> )	dala	сфера, поле
goal ( <i>n</i> )	darvoza, gol	цель
goal keeper	darvozabon	вратарь
injury ( <i>n</i> )	jarohat	травма
keep ( <i>v</i> )	saqlamoq	хранить
maul ( <i>v</i> )	burdalamoq	разрезать
offence	intizomga rioya qilmaslik	нарушение
point ( <i>n, v</i> )	ko‘rsatmoq	очко, указывать
referee ( <i>n</i> )	hakam	судья
soccer ( <i>n</i> )	futbol	футбол
substitution	o‘rnini bosuvchi	замена

### ***The origins of football and rugby***

*Nevertheless, how did English football, or soccer, and its sister-game Rugby, originate? In addition, why did it happen in England? The origins of football go back hundreds of years, and there are several towns and villages in England where ancient forms of football are still played. The original game had few rules, and differed from place to*



place. Basically, the teams just had to try and get a ball (or some other object) past the opponent's line. Sometimes the lines were over a mile apart, and the field was the village street.... or even a field with no limits! People could kick the ball (and their opponents), run with it, throw it - anything was allowed.

*Football at an English public school in 1889.*

*In the nineteenth century, public schools developed fast; and since many of them were boarding schools, they had to keep boys occupied all day. Sport was a popular way of doing this; at first each school had its own games, with its own rules; but slowly fixed rules became established. In many schools, carrying the ball was not allowed; the game was called "football". Some schools however preferred a version of the game where players were allowed to carry the ball; one of these schools was in the small town of Rugby.*

*In 1863, a group of enthusiasts, who had played ball games at different schools, met in London to fix rules for the game. They formed the Football Association. Eighteen years later, as the game was getting more and more popular, they organised the first F.A.Cup competition.*

*Following the example of schools and colleges, the owners of factories (many of whom had been educated at public schools) began encouraging employees to form teams, and football soon became very popular in the industrial north of England. By 1888, the game had become popular enough to support professional clubs, with 12 original clubs forming the Football League. Since then, the popularity of both football and rugby has continued to spread across the world; and though rugby has not been adopted in all countries, there is probably no country in the world where football is now unknown.*

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT

across the world (w.comb)	jahon bo'yicha	по всему миру
apart (prep, adv)	-dan bo'lak, alohida	кроме, в отдельности
carry (v)	olib bormoq, bajarmoq, o'tkazmoq	нести, проводить
encourage (v)	ruhlantirmoq,	поощрять

	ragʻbatlantirmoq	
limit ( <i>n, v</i> )	chegara, limit	предел, лимит
line ( <i>n</i> )	cegara chizigʻi, liniya	линия, черта
originate ( <i>v</i> )	boshlab bermoq, yaratmoq	происходить
prefer ( <i>v</i> )	afzal koʻrmoq	предпочитать
since ( <i>conj, prep</i> )	shundan beri	так как, с тех пор
village ( <i>n</i> )	qishloq	деревня

### SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES

- *Work in groups of three. Choose a card and relying on the information obtained from above texts speak on the selected type of sport.*

**Football**

**Soccer**

**Rugby**

### LEARNING WITH MODERN PEDAGOGICAL TECHNOLOGIES

#### CONCEPTUAL TABLE

- *Fill in the table using the information from the texts above*

	<i>Football</i>	<i>Soccer</i>	<i>Rugby</i>
<i>Period of Origination</i>			
<i>Place of origination</i>			
<i>Number of players</i>			
<i>Present popularity</i>			



## **PART III**

# *The United States of America*

## **The Discovery of America**

*Mystery surrounds the early history of the North American continent. The original settlers, the Indians, are believed to have migrated from northern Asia to Alaska, and from there down into warmer climates. The physical appearance of the American Indians, with their black hair, copper tint and high cheekbones, suggests their Oriental*



*origin. Some scientists think that 20,000 years ago, during the most glacial period, North America and Asia were linked at the Bering Strait.*

*Probably the first white men to see American shores were Scandinavians, who in their round trading shades travelled in Arctic seas to make their way to Greenland in about the years 985 A.D. From this vast island their ships went still farther westward and there is some evidence that about the year 1000 Leif Ericson and his crew landed in what is now the United States.*

*The Scandinavians left almost no documents describing their voyages. So it was Christopher Columbus who came, saw, described and helped to colonize the West Indies in 1490's (1492) and is the discoverer of America. Columbus was mistaken in thinking he had reached India, that is why he called the first people he saw "Indians". It is not known how they called Columbus.*

*The discovery of America was a pure accident. Vast, fast growing empire of Turkey of the 15th century was blocking Western Europe's trade with Asia, a trade that had started in the days of Marco Polo<sup>11</sup> (1254-1324). So the Western European countries decided to get to Asia another way. If the world was really round, as most geographers believed, why wouldn't it be possible to sail westward from Spain and keep going till land was reached. And surely*

---

<sup>11</sup> Marco Polo (1254-1324) - famous Venetian explorer and traveller, who made through China, India and other eastern countries and published the record of his various wanderings, recounting the many marvels and wonders he had seen - a record which seemed for the most part beyond credence to his contemporaries but now largely confirmed;

*that would be Asia. Neither Columbus nor his contemporaries knew about North and South America were standing on the way of reaching Asia by sailing westward.*

*So Columbus and other explorers found the Bahamas, Panama and South America and*



*thought they had reached Asia. Columbus himself did not live to know that he had reached only America not India. The error was not discovered until 1519-22 when an expedition under Ferdinand Magellan of Spain<sup>12</sup> sailed*

*around the tip of South America and on across the Pacific Ocean to Asia. Magellan was killed by the natives in the Philippines but his men carried on. They sailed down around Africa and back to Spain and proved not only that the earth was round but also that there were more of it than the geographers had supposed.*

*America gets its name from Amerigo Vespucci (1451?-1512), an Italian who explored the coast of Brazil in 1501. On his return to Europe he wrote so much of his travels that his reputation became more famous than Columbus'. Map-makers, seeking a name for the New World, chose to honor Vespucci (an irony of history) considering how much greater were the achievements of Columbus.*

#### **Fact file: USA**

<b>Formal name:</b>	<b>The United States of America</b>
<b>Capital:</b>	<b>Washington</b>
<b>Government:</b>	<b>Federa Republic</b>
<b>President:</b>	<b>Donald Trump</b>
<b>Area:</b>	<b>3,8 million sq miles</b>
<b>Population:</b>	<b>324, 700 000</b>
<b>State Language:</b>	<b>English</b>
<b>Currency:</b>	<b>US dollar (USD)</b>

---

<sup>12</sup> Ferdinand Magellan (1480?-1521) - famous Portuguese navigator and commander of the first expedition (1519) to sail round the world. Since 1517 he was in the service of Spain

## ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

cheekbones ( <i>n</i> )	yuz	скулы
crew ( <i>n</i> )	ekipaj	экипаж
explore ( <i>v</i> )	tadqiqot o'tkazmoq	проводить исследования
error ( <i>n</i> )	xato	ошибка
glacial ( <i>adj</i> )	sovuq	ледниковый
expedition ( <i>n</i> )	ekspeditsiya	экспедиция
kill ( <i>v</i> )	o'ldirmoq	убить
land ( <i>n, v</i> )	tomorqa, qirg'oqqa suzib kelmoq, yerga qo'nmoq	земельные участки, приплыть к берегу, приземлиться
mistake ( <i>n</i> )	xatolik	ошибка
mystery ( <i>n</i> )	sinoat, sir	тайна
reach ( <i>v</i> )	erishmoq	достичь
return ( <i>v</i> )	qaytmoq	возвращаться, вернуться
suggest ( <i>v</i> )	taxmin qilmoq, o'ylamoq	предполагать, думать
suppose ( <i>v</i> )	mo'ljallamoq	предпологать
sail ( <i>n</i> )	yelkan	парус, плыть
trade ( <i>n</i> )	savdo-sotiq	торговля

## The USA at a glance



The USA is one of the largest countries in the world. It is situated in the central part of the North America continent. The area of the USA is over nine million square km. It is washed by the Pacific Ocean and by the Atlantic

Ocean.

The USA is a federal republic, consisting of 50 states. Each of these states has its own government. Congress in the American parliament consists of two chambers. The president is the head of the state and government. He is elected for four years.

The population of the US is nearly 250 million people; most of the people live in towns. People of different nationalities live in USA.

The official language of the country is English. The capital is Washington. It was named in honor of the president, George Washington. As the USA is a large country, the climate is different in different regions of the country. For example, the Pacific coast is a region of mild winters and warm, dry summers, but the eastern continental region is watered with rainfall. The region around the Great Lakes has changeable weather.

There are many mountains in the USA. For example, the highest peak of the Cordeliers in the USA is 4,418 metros.

The main river in the country is the Mississippi. But there are many other great rivers in the USA: the Colorado in the south and the Columbia in the north-west. There are five Great lakes between the USA and Canada.

The USA produces more than 52 per cent of the world's corn, wheat, cotton, tobacco.

There are many big cities in the country. They are Washington (the capital of the country), New York (the city of contrasts, financial and business

center in the US), San Francisco, Los Angeles, Philadelphia, and Detroit (the center of the automobile industry), Hollywood (the center of the US film business).

The USA has an Academy of sciences. There are many scientific institutions, museums, libraries, theatres and other interesting places in the country.

The USA is a highly developed industrial country. The USA is rich in mineral resources, such as aluminum, salt, zinc, copper, and other. The country is rich in coal, natural gas, gold and silver too. It holds one of the first places in the world for production of coal, iron, oil, natural gas.

Such industries as machine building, ship building are highly developed. American agriculture produces a lot of food products: grain, fruit, vegetable.

#### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

aluminum ( <i>n</i> )	aluminium	алюминий
changeable weather ( <i>w.comb</i> )	o‘zgaruvchan havo	переменная погода
chamber ( <i>n</i> )	palata	палата
coast ( <i>n</i> )	qirg‘oq	берег
copper ( <i>n</i> )	mis	медь
elect ( <i>v</i> )	tanlamoq	избирать
head ( <i>n</i> )	bosh, rahbar, bob	зд. глава
in honor of ( <i>prep.</i> <i>comb</i> )	shrafiga	в честь
salt ( <i>n</i> )	osh tuzi	поваренная соль
silver ( <i>n</i> )	kumushsimon	серебряный

wash (v)	atroidan o'tmoq, o'rab olmoq	ЗД. ОМЫВАТЬСЯ
zinc (n)	rux	ЦИНК

### **SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:**

*Discuss the questions below*

- 1 When was the North American continent settled?
- 2 Who were the original settlers?
- 3 What proofs are there of the Oriental origin of the American Indians?
- 4 Who were the first white men to see American shores?
- 5 Who received credit for discovering America and why?
- 6 When did Columbus colonize the West Indies?
- 7 When was the mistake of Columbus discovered?
- 8 What important fact did the Magellan expedition establish?
- 9 How did America get its name?
- 10 Why was not America named after the person Columbus who first discovered America?

➤ *Decide if the statements are TRUE or FALSE*

- 1 American continents full of secrets.
- 2 The first American inhabitants come from European origin.
- 3 Some scientists suppose that America and Asia were not a separate continents during the glacial period.

- 4 The first white men who came to America shores were Spanish people.
- 5 Columbus did not know that he reached India.
- 6 Besides America, Columbus and his crew found other lands.
- 7 Turkish Empire gave the opportunity to all countries to sail to different directions.
- 8 Columbus realized his mistake on discovering another place before his death.
- 9 Magellan discovered South America and then the Philippines.
- 10 Amerigo Vespucci, an Italian scientist did not discover America, however explored America so widely that the continents were named after his name.

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 Where is the USA situated?
- 2 What is the area of the US?
- 3 What is the capital of the USA and why is it called so?
- 4 Why is the USA has different climate?
- 5 How long is the highest mountain peak on the US?
- 6 What rivers are there in the USA?
- 7 Which are the biggest cities in the USA?
- 8 What can you say about mineral recourses of the US?
- 9 What mineral resources is the USA rich in?
- 10 Would you like to visit to the USA? For what would especially visit it?

## Geographical location and nature of the USA

Covering a large part of the North American continent, The United States shares land borders with Canada (to the north) and Mexico (to the south), and a territorial water border with Russia in the northwest, and two territorial water borders in the



southeast between Florida and Cuba, and Florida and the Bahamas. The contiguous forty-eight states are otherwise bounded by the Pacific Ocean on the west, the Atlantic Ocean on the east, and the Gulf of Mexico to the southeast. Alaska borders the Pacific Ocean to the south and southwest, the Bering Strait to the west, and the Arctic Ocean to the north, while Hawaii lies far to the southwest of the mainland in the Pacific Ocean.

Forty-eight of the states are in the single region between Canada and Mexico; this group is referred to, with varying precision and formality, as the continental or contiguous United States, and as the Lower 48. Alaska, which is not included in the term contiguous United States, is at the northwestern end of North America, separated from the Lower 48 by Canada.

The country's dependent territories are offshore and have distinct geographies of their own; the majority are islands. The third-largest country in the world (after the Russian Federation and Canada), the USA has an enormous diversity of geographical features,



including mountains, plains, and coastal zones. Though there are many cities that are densely populated with more manmade features than natural ones, there are also vast rural areas that are far more sparsely populated. The climate ranges from subtropical to arctic, with a corresponding breadth of flora and fauna.

The United States has varied weather conditions depends both upon the location and the season. Spring (March, April, May) and autumn (September and October) are generally cooler. The summer months (June, July, and August) are generally hot regardless of the region, but winter temperatures (November-February) can vary substantially depending upon the part of the US.

The southern part of the country tends to be warmer than the north. The general climate of the continental US is temperate, the Hawaii is tropical and Alaska is arctic. Many of the country's dependent territories, such as Guam, Puerto Rico, and the US Virgin Islands, are also tropical.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

border ( <i>n, v</i> )	chegara, chegaradosh	граница, граничиться
breadth ( <i>n</i> )	kenglik	ширина
distinct ( <i>adj</i> )	aniq, yaqqol	отчётливый, явный
contiguous ( <i>adj</i> )	yonma-yon, payvasta, yondash	смежный, прилегающий
cool ( <i>adj</i> )	salqin	прохладный
feature ( <i>n</i> )	xususiyat, tavsif	черта, характеристика
land ( <i>n</i> )	quruqlik	суша
location ( <i>n</i> )	manzilgoh	расположение
precision ( <i>n</i> )	aniqlik, bexatolik	точность, меткость
regardless ( <i>adv</i> )	shunga qaramay	несмотря на
state ( <i>n</i> )	shtat	штат

tropic (*n*)

tropik

тропик

rural (*adj*)

qishloq joyi

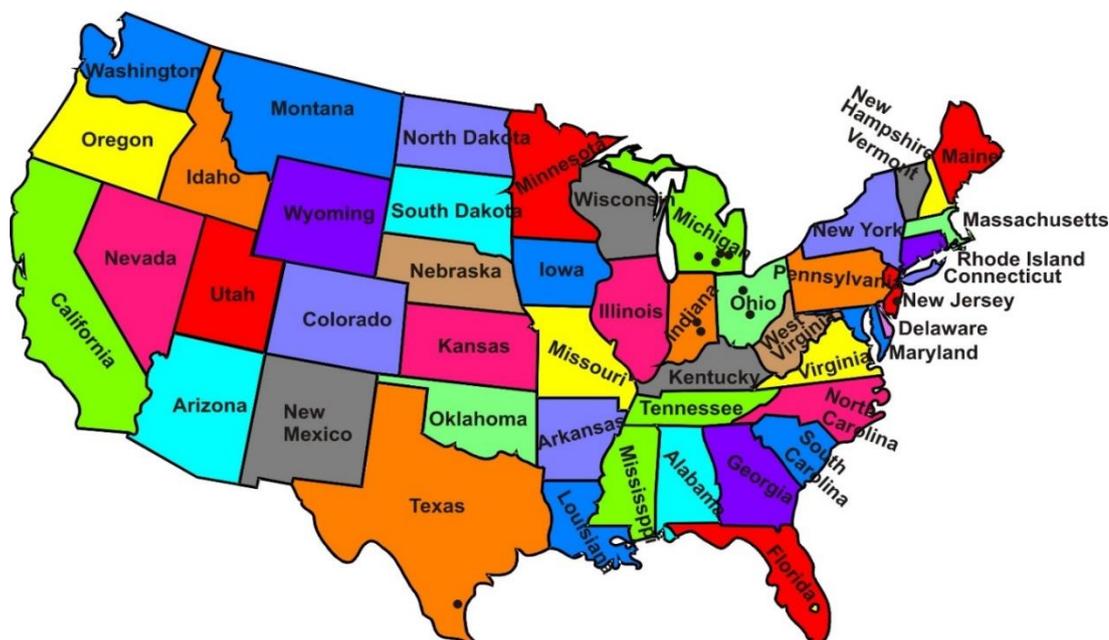
сельская местность

### SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 What are the territorial borders of the USA?
- 2 How many state are there between Canada and Mexico?
- 3 What is the place of the USA according to its territorial size?
- 4 Why the geographical features of the USA are diverse?
- 5 Which areas of the US are mostly densely populated?
- 6 Is the climate of America diverse? Why is it so? How does it change?
- 7 What is the weather condition of the US?
- 8 Which part of the US tend to be warmer?
- 9 Which parts of the US have tropical climate?
- 10 Which parts of the US have arctic climate?

➤ *Here is the map of the USA with 50 states. Write the names of the states in the alphabetical order.*



## A Brief history of the USA



The history of the USA dates back only to the 15th century. In the 15th century there was no USA at all. The present territory of the USA was divided among some countries. In the 15th — 16th centuries some territory of the USA belonged to Great Britain (northern and western lands); southern parts (California, Florida, New Mexico, Texas) belonged to Spain, then — to Mexico; the central part, the territory was called Louisiana — to France; Alaska was possessed by Russia; some territories remained to be under Indians control.

In 18th century there were only thirteen Britain's American colonies and they broke with Great Britain in 1776 and later were recognized as the new nation of the United States of America, following the Treaty of Paris in 1783.



During the 19th and 20th centuries, 37 new states were added to the original 13 as the nation expanded their frontiers across the North American continent and acquired a number of overseas possessions.



There were three most dramatic experiences in the nation's history: the Civil War (1861-1865), the Great Depression of the 1930s and Vietnam War of the 1960s-70s. After its victories in World Wars I and II and the end of the Cold War in 1991,

the USA remains the world's most powerful state. The economy is marked by steady growth, low unemployment and inflation, and great advances in technology.

Nowadays USA is world's third-largest



country by size (after Russia and Canada) and by population (after China and India). It is about half the size of Russia or lightly larger than China or Brazil.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

add ( <i>v</i> )	qo‘shmoq	добавлять
acquire ( <i>v</i> )	ega bo‘lmoq, orttirmoq	приобрести
dramatic ( <i>adj</i> )	sezilarli, dabdabali	драматический
expand ( <i>v</i> )	kengaymoq	расширяться
experience ( <i>n, v</i> )	amaliyot, tajriba	опыт, переживание, пережить (на своём опыте)
frontier ( <i>n</i> )	chegara	граница
lightly ( <i>adv</i> )	shunchaki, befarqlarcha	слегка
nowadays ( <i>adv</i> )	hozirda, shu kunlarda	в настоящее время
oversea ( <i>adj</i> )	dengiz ortidan, dengiz ortida	заморский
possession ( <i>n</i> )	egalik qilish, ega bo‘lish	владение
remain ( <i>v</i> )	qoldiq, inson qoldiqlari	оставаться
steady ( <i>adj</i> )	uzluksiz, to‘xtovsiz	устойчивый

### SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 When did the history of the USA begin?
- 2 How many Britain's American colonies were there in North America in the 18 th century?

- 3 What were three most dramatic experiences in the USA history?
- 4 When was the Civil War?
- 5 When did the Great Depression happen?
- 6 When was Vietnam War?
- 7 When did the Cold War finish?
- 8 When did the Great Depression happen?
- 9 When was Vietnam War?
- 10 When did the Cold War finish?

➤ *Fill in the suitable word from the box*

<b>belong to</b>	<b>break with</b>	<b>steady growth</b>	<b>lightly</b>	<b>overseas</b>
<b>expand</b>	<b>date back</b>	<b>frontier</b>	<b>acquire</b>	<b>possess</b>

- 1 The appearance of the first states on the previous lands of Uzbekistan \_\_\_\_\_ to the IV century.
- 2 We are making slow, but \_\_\_\_\_ in learning the language.
- 3 The people or countries separated from your country by the sea or ocean are called \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 4 A child's vocabulary \_\_\_\_\_ through reading
- 5 How long will it take \_\_\_\_\_ the necessary skills?
- 6 In the 19<sup>th</sup> century in the Western USA the \_\_\_\_\_ were wild and unknown.
- 7 Sally \_\_\_\_\_ her boyfriend in spite of her long relation with him.

- 8 Several of the points you raise do not \_\_\_\_\_this discussion
- 9 Belgium was the first European country \_\_\_\_\_ a fully-fledged rail network.
- 10 This is not a problem we should take \_\_\_\_\_ .

## ***The first colonies in North America***

*The first Europeans to establish colonies in North America were the Spanish. In 1526 a Spaniard called Lucas Vazquez de Ayllon attempted to found a colony in Carolina. (He also brought the first black slaves to North America). However the attempt failed. Many Spaniards died of disease and the survivors abandoned the colony.*

*In 1565 Pedro Menendez de Aviles founded a settlement at St Augustine, Florida, the first permanent European settlement in what is now the USA.*

*The first English attempt to colonize North America was made by a man named Sir Humphrey Gilbert. In 1578 Queen Elizabeth granted him permission to establish a colony there. In 1583 Gilbert sailed with a small fleet of ships to Newfoundland. However Gilbert soon abandoned the venture. Gilbert was lost on the voyage home.*

*However his half-brother, Walter Raleigh made another attempt to found a colony. In 1584 he sent two ships to explore the coast. They found what they thought was a suitable place for a colony. In January 1585 Queen Elizabeth the 'Virgin Queen' allowed him to call the place Virginia, after her. In April 1585 an expedition was sent led by Richard Grenville. They arrived in July 1585. Grenville left men on Roanoke Island then left for England to obtain more men and supplies. However while he was gone the colonists ran very short of supplies. In 1586 the colonists abandoned Virginia and returned to England.*

*In 1587 another attempt to found a colony was made by a man named John White. He led an expedition of men, women and children to Virginia. However White returned to England to seek more support for the colony. Because of a war between England and Spain he was unable to return to Virginia until 1590. When he did he found the colony deserted. The fate of the colonists is unknown.*

## ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

abandon ( <i>v</i> )	bosh tortmoq, tark etmoq	отказаться от, покинуть
arrive ( <i>v</i> )	kelmoq, yetib kelmoq	прибыть
attempt ( <i>n, v</i> )	urinish urinib koʻrmoq	попытка
be run of ( <i>v</i> )	tugamoq	заканчиваться
disease ( <i>n</i> )	kasallik	болезнь
fleet ( <i>n</i> )	flot	флот
permission ( <i>n</i> )	ruxsat	разрешение
spaniard ( <i>adj</i> )	ispan	испанец
suitable ( <i>adj</i> )	mos keladigan	подходящий
supplies ( <i>n</i> )	zaxira, qoʻr (oziq-ovqat mahsulotlari)	зд. запасы (продукты питания)
unable ( <i>adv</i> )	qoʻldan kela olmaslik	не в состоянии

## National Flag and National Emblem of the USA



The flag of the United States features thirteen equal horizontal stripes of red (top and bottom) alternating with white; there is a blue rectangle in the upper hoist-side corner bearing 50 small, white, five-pointed stars arranged in nine offset horizontal rows of six stars (top and bottom) alternating with rows of five stars; the 50 stars represent the 50 states; the 13 stripes the 13 original colonies. The flag is known as Old Glory, and no one knows for certain who designed it. Most historians believe that U.S.



Congressman, Francis Hopkinson was the original designer, while a few still believe that Betsy Ross, a Philadelphia seamstress, made the first one.

The Bald Eagle was officially declared the National Emblem of the United States by the Second Continental Congress in 1782. It was selected by the USA's founding fathers because it is a species unique to North America. It has become the living symbol of the USA's freedoms, spirit and pursuit of excellence. Its image and symbolism have played a significant role in American art, folklore, music and architecture.

*The Statue of Liberty is the symbol of American democracy. It stands on Liberty Island in New York. It is one of the first things people see when they arrive in New York by sea. This National Monument was a present from France to the USA. France gave the statue to America in 1884 as a symbol of friendship. Liberty carries the torch of freedom - in her right hand. In her left hand she is holding a tablet with the inscription "July 4, 1776" - American Independence Day.*



### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

alternate (v, adj)	almashmoq, almashinadigan	чередоваться, чередующийся
arrange (v)	tashkil qilmoq, kelishib olmoq	организовать, договариваться
bald eagle (n)	oqbosh suvburguti	белоголовый орлан
excellence (n)	ustunlik, afzallik	превосходство
glory (n)	shon-shuhrat	слава
inscription (n)	yozuv	надпись
offset (n)	novda, zurriyod, avlod,	потомок, смещение,

	siljish	смещать
pursuit ( <i>n, v</i> )	ta'qib qilish, mashg'ulot, intilish	преследование, стремление
seamstress ( <i>n</i> )	tikuvchi ayol	швея
species ( <i>n</i> )	ko'rinish, tur, xil	вид
spirit ( <i>n</i> )	ruh, ma'naviyat	дух, духовность
top ( <i>n</i> )	top, tepada turish	топ, верхняя часть
torch ( <i>n</i> )	mangu olov	факел

### **SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES**

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 What do people often call American flag?
- 2 What are the colours of the American flag?
- 3 How many stripes has the flag got?
- 4 What is the national emblem?
- 5 When was the Bald Eagle was officially declared?
- 6 Why was the Bald Eagle chosen as a national emblem of the US?
- 7 Where is the statue of Liberty placed?
- 8 What country gift Statue of Libery to the USA?
- 9 What is in the right hand of Liberty?
- 10 What is in the left hand of Liberty?

➤ Match column A with column B

A		B	
1	<b>Pedro Menendez de Aviles</b>	<b>a</b>	Was the first Englishman who made an attempt to colonize North America
2	<b>Gilbert's half-brother</b>	<b>b</b>	Allowed Humphrey Gilbert to establish colony
3	<b>Sir Humphrey Gilber</b>	<b>c</b>	brought the first black slaves to North America
4	<b>Walter Raleigh.</b>	<b>d</b>	found an appropriate place to colonize, which is called Virginia nowadays.
5	<b>John White</b>	<b>e</b>	Gave her name "Virginia" after her.
6	<b>Queen Elizabeth</b>	<b>f</b>	he sent two ships to explore the coast in 1584
7	<b>Queen Elizabeth</b>	<b>g</b>	is today's Virginia
8	<b>St Augustine</b>	<b>h</b>	left his people on Roanoke Island to bring more men and supplies, but the colonists abandoned Virginia and returned to England.
9	<b>Grenville</b>	<b>i</b>	returned to England and remained there until 1590 because of a war between England and Spain
10	<b>the Spanish</b>	<b>j</b>	founded a settlement at St Augustine, Florida

## Economy of the USA

*Today, the US economy remains the largest in the world. It is the second largest overall trading nation and the world's second largest manufactured goods producer: making nearly 20 percent of all goods manufactured in the world. It is also the third largest producer of oil and natural gas. The US consistently ranks around ninth or tenth in the world for per capita GDP, and American workers have some of the highest average household incomes in the world. Unfortunately, the gap between the wealthy and poor is also larger in the United States than anywhere else in the world.*

The United States is the world's largest national economy in nominal terms and second largest according to purchasing power parity (PPP), representing 22% of nominal global GDP and 17% of gross world product (GWP). The United States' GDP was estimated to be \$17.914 trillion as of Q2 2015. The U.S. dollar is the currency most used in international transactions and is the world's foremost reserve currency, backed by its science and technology, its military, the full faith of the US government to reimburse its debts, its central role in a range of international institutions since World War II and the petrodollar system. Several countries use it as their official currency, and in many others, it is the factor currency. The United States has a mixed economy and has maintained a stable overall GDP growth rate, a moderate unemployment rate, and high levels of research and capital investment. Its seven largest trading partners are Canada, China, Mexico, Japan, Germany, South Korea, and the United Kingdom.



The US has abundant natural resources, a well-developed infrastructure, and high productivity. Americans have the highest average household and employee income among OECD<sup>13</sup> nations, and in 2010 had the fourth highest median household income, down from second highest in 2007. It has

---

<sup>13</sup> OECD – abbreviation: organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (an organization of industrial countries that encourages trade and economic growth)

been the world's largest national economy (not including colonial empires) since at least the 1890s.

The U.S. is the world's third largest producer of oil and natural gas. It is one of the largest trading nations in the world as well as the world's second largest manufacturer, representing a fifth of the global manufacturing output. The US not only has the largest internal market for goods, but also dominates the trade in services. US total trade amounted to \$4.93T in 2012. Of the world's 500 largest companies, 128 are headquartered in the US.



The United States has one of the world's largest and most influential financial markets. The New York Stock Exchange is by far the world's largest stock exchange by market capitalization. Foreign investments made in the US total almost \$2.4 trillion, while



American investments in foreign countries total over \$3.3 trillion. The economy of the U.S. leads in international ranking on venture capital and Global Research and Development funding. Consumer

spending comprises 71% of the US economy in 2013. The United States has the largest consumer market in the world, with a household final consumption expenditure five times larger than Japan's. The labor market has attracted immigrants from all over the world and its net migration rate is among the highest in the world. The U.S. is one of the top-performing economies in studies such as the Ease of Doing Business Index, the Global Competitiveness Report, and others.

## ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT

average ( <i>adj, n</i> )	o‘rtacha	средняя
attract ( <i>v</i> )	jalb qilmoq	привлечь
capitalization ( <i>n</i> )	kapitallashuv	капитализация
comprise ( <i>v</i> )	o‘z ichiga oladi	включать, охватывать
consumption ( <i>n</i> )	iste‘mol	потребление
consumer ( <i>n</i> )	iste‘molchi	потребитель
expenditure ( <i>n</i> )	xarajatlar	расходы
immigrant ( <i>n</i> )	immigrant	иммигрант
manufacture ( <i>n, v</i> )	ishlab chiqarish	производство, производить
migration ( <i>n</i> )	migratsiya	миграция
nominal ( <i>adj</i> )	nominal	номинальный
parity ( <i>n</i> )	tenglik	паритет
venture ( <i>n</i> )	korxonona	предприятие

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 What is the role of the national economy of the USA in the world?
- 2 Why is the currency of the USA used in international transactions?
- 3 Which countries are the main trade partners of the USA?
- 4 Since when has America had highest national economy?

- 5 What natural resources does the USA dominate in the world?
- 6 How much was the trade amount of the USA in 2012?
- 7 What is the world's largest stock exchange?
- 8 What is the amount of foreign investment in America and American investment for other countries?
- 9 What is the rate of the consumer market of the USA?
- 10 What economical studies take the top place in the USA?

➤ *Match the meaning of the phrases on the left (1-10) with phrases on the right (a-j) which express similar ideas*

<b>1</b>	<b>foremost</b>	<b>a</b>	a business project or activity, especially one that involves taking risks
<b>2</b>	<b>overall</b>	<b>b</b>	a person who buys goods or uses services
<b>3</b>	<b>parity</b>	<b>c</b>	firmly fixed; not like to move, change or fail
<b>4</b>	<b>estimate</b>	<b>d</b>	the units of money of two different countries being equal
<b>5</b>	<b>stable</b>	<b>e</b>	existing in a large quantities; more than enough
<b>6</b>	<b>abundant</b>	<b>f</b>	the most important or famous; in a position at the front
<b>7</b>	<b>influential</b>	<b>g</b>	including all the things or people that are involved in a particular situation; general
<b>8</b>	<b>venture</b>	<b>h</b>	a judgment that you make without having the exact details or figures about the size,

			amount cost, etc. of something
<b>9</b>	<b>consumer</b>	<b>i</b>	basically, mostly
<b>10</b>	<b>rank</b>	<b>j</b>	having a lot of influence on something or somebody

## LEARNING WITH MODERN PEDAGOGICAL TECHNOLOGIES

### *CONCEPTUAL TABLE*

➤ *Fill in the table with the key words that match for each column*

<b>Symbols of the USA</b>	<b>Economy</b>	<b>Industry</b>

### *FIVE MINUTE ESSAY*

➤ *Using the information from the conceptual table above, write a five minute essay*

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

# *Cities of the USA*

*Cities of the USA are a rapidly growing and attracting people all over the world with their sightseeing and skyscrapers. Among them are Chicago, Boston, Philadelphia, Los Angeles, San Francisco and of course New York - the heart, and Washington - the capital of the USA.*

## **Washington**



Washington, the capital of the United States of America, is situated on the Potomac River in the District of Columbia. The district is a piece of land ten miles square and it does not belong to any separate state but to all the states. The district is named in honour of Columbus, the discoverer of America.

The capital owes much to the first President of the USA -George Washington. It was G. Washington, who chose the place for the District and laid in 1790 the corner-stone of the Capitol, where Congress sits.

Washington is not the largest city in the USA. It has a population of 900 000 people. Washington is a one-industry town. That industry is government. It does not produce anything except very much scrap paper. Every day 25 railway cars leave Washington loaded with scrap paper.

Washington has many historical places. The largest and tallest among the buildings is the Capitol with its great House of Representatives and the Senate chamber. There are no skyscrapers in Washington because no other building must be taller than the Capitol. The White House is the President's residence. All American presidents except George Washington (the White House was not yet built in his time), have lived in the White House. It was built in 1799. It is a two-storied, white building.

Not far from the Capitol is the Washington Monument, which looks like a very big pencil. It rises 160 metres and is hollow inside. A special lift brings visitors to the top in 70 seconds from where they can enjoy a wonderful view of the whole city.

The Jefferson Memorial was built in memory of the third President of the USA, Thomas Jefferson, who was also the author of the Declaration of Independence. The memorial is surrounded by cherry-trees. The Lincoln Memorial devoted to the memory of the 16th President of the US, the author of the Emancipation Proclamation, which gave freedom to Negro slaves in America.

## ***The White House***

*The White House is an important part of Washington D.C. It is where the President lives and works. George Washington is the only president who did not live there.*

*John Adams was the first president to live in the White House. He and his family moved into the house in 1800.*

*There are 132 rooms in the White House. Visitors may tour some of the first-floor rooms; the second floor is "home" for the president and his family. There are also some special rooms. There is even a private bowling alley and a movie theatre.*

### **ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT**

devote (v)	bag'ishlamoq, ajratmoq	посвящать
district (n)	tuman, okrug	район
floor (n)	etaj	этаж
hollow (n)	bo'shliq, botiq joy, kamgak	полость, впадина
piece (n)	bo'lak, parcha	кусок
residence (n)	qarorgoh	резиденция

skyscraper (n)	osmono‘par	небоскреб
surround (v)	o‘rab olmoq	окружать

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 Where is Washington situated?
- 2 To which state does the city of Washington belong?
- 3 In whose honour is the district of Columbia named?
- 4 Who was the first President of the USA?
- 5 Who chose the place for the District?
- 6 Is Washington the largest city in the USA?
- 7 What industries are situated in the city?
- 8 When was the White House built?
- 9 What do 25 railway cars leave Washington loaded with? In whose memory was the Jefferson Memorial built?
- 10 What industries are situated in the city? Which document gave freedom to Negro slaves in America?

➤ *Fill in the suitable word from the box*

<i>choose</i>	<b>scrap paper</b>	<b>residence</b>	<b>devote to</b>	<b>slave</b>
<b>except</b>	<b>storied</b>	<b>surround</b>	<b>tour</b>	<b>memorial</b>

- 1 I like to \_\_\_\_\_ myself with beautiful things.
- 2 People are becoming \_\_\_\_\_ of a computer and technology.

- 3 The painting will be a lasting \_\_\_\_\_ to a remarkable woman.
- 4 We had a great \_\_\_\_\_ to Samarkand.
- 5 Navoi State Mining Institute is four-\_\_\_\_\_ building.
- 6 I could only \_\_\_\_\_ two hours a day to work on the project.
- 7 She had to \_\_\_\_\_ between giving up her job or hiring a nanny.
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ is a main industry of Washington.
- 9 **10** Downing Street is the British Prime Minister's official residence.
- 10 We work every day \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday.

## New York



New York is the largest city in the USA and the biggest seaport. It is the business centre of the United States. New York is situated in the mouth of the Hudson river. In comparison with such ancient historical cities as, say, Rome, London, Moscow or Paris, New York is quite young. It was founded in 1613 by Dutch settlers.

New York City, nickname **Big Apple**. NYC is rated as the alpha world city for its global influences in media, politics, education, entertainment and fashion and it is one of the world's major centers of commerce and finance. New York City boasts to be the "Capital City of the Modern World". Its core is Manhattan, an island near the mouth of the Hudson River. The former trading post founded by colonists of the Dutch Republic is the economic and cultural heart of the city, containing the stock exchange on Wall Street and the headquarters of the United Nations. Another famous street is Broadway. It is the longest and the widest street in New York. It is the street there most famous theaters are situated. New York is the city of famous skyscrapers. The highest buildings are Empire State Building and the United Nations building.

The total area of New York is 365 square miles or 900 square kilometres. New York City itself has a population of 8.3 million inhabitants, just under 20 million people live in the New York metropolitan area. Among the inhabitants of New York one can meet people of almost all nationalities. They settled here during the immigration in the 19th and at the beginning of the 20th century.

A traveller who visits New York for the first time wonders at the modern architecture. The Statue of Liberty, which is on Liberty Island, was a present from France in 1876 on the occasion of the 100th anniversary of American independence. This statue and a few 18th and 19th century churches, hospitals, newspaper offices and other buildings are the only examples of "old" architecture in New York. Wherever your eyes travel, everywhere you can see sky-scrapers.

New York, one of the USA leading manufacturing cities, is the home of great firms and banks. The most important branches of industry are those producing vehicles, glass, chemicals and all kinds of machinery. The city has very busy traffic. Its streets and highways are full of cars and buses. The mouth of the Hudson



river makes an excellent harbour for numerous passengers and cargo ships from all over the world. Speaking about New York one can't but mention the outstanding role, the city plays, in the cultural life of the country. Metropolitan Museum of Art and the Whitney Museum of Art has collection works of art of many peoples and of all times. Most of the theatres and cinemas are in or near Broadway, the longest street and the biggest shopping district in New York. The Metropolitan and Modern Arts Museums attract many visitors.

## ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT

alpha world city ( <i>w.comb</i> )	jahonning bosh shahri	альфа (главный) город мира
branch ( <i>n</i> )	bandargoh	гавань
harbour ( <i>n</i> )	soha, tarmoq	отрасль
heart ( <i>n</i> )	yurak, qalb, negiz	сердце, центр
headquarter ( <i>n</i> )	stab-kvartira	штаб-квартира
highways ( <i>n</i> )	shosse,	шоссе
cargo ( <i>n</i> )	yuk	груз, карго
metropolitan ( <i>n</i> )	mitropolit	митрополит
mouth ( <i>n</i> )	daryoning quyilish joyi	зд. устье реки
nickname ( <i>n</i> )	laqab	прозвище
on the occasion of ( <i>prep comb.</i> )	hodisa sababli	по случаю
stock exchange ( <i>w.comb.</i> )	fond birjasi	фондовая биржа
vehicle ( <i>n</i> )	transport vositasi	транспортное средство

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 Where is New York situated? When was it found?
- 2 What is the nickname of new York?

- 3 Why is new York ranked as the alpha city?
- 4 What is the core of New York?
- 5 What important organizations are located on Wall Street?
- 6 What is the longest and widest street in New York?
- 7 What is the highest building of new York?
- 8 What impresses a visitor who comes to New York for the first time?  
What buildings are considered as the examples of “old” architecture?
- 9 What manufacturing branches are there in new York?
- 10 What can be said about the cultural life of new York?

➤ *Decide if the statements are TRUE or FALSE*

1	New York has several names because of its rapid development.	
2	New York is as old as Paris, London and Rome.	
3	The first people who came to new York were the English and Spanish people.	
4	The highest building in new York is the Statue of Liberty.	
5	Most of the buildings in New York are built by Dutches.	
6	Skyscrapers are located only on the island of the Hudson.	
7	The total population of New York is about 30 million people.	
8	One can meet people in New York of all European nationalities.	
9	The traffic is usully busy on the mouth of the river Hudson.	
10	Cultural life of new York is not as well developed as its manufacture.	

## Los Angeles



Los Angeles is America's second largest city. Its name comes from the Spanish for 'the City of Angels', because the land was originally claimed for Spain by missionaries in 1781. It became an American city in 1850 when California became part of the United States. Los Angeles is a popular place because of its pleasant semi-tropical climate and beautiful Pacific coast. Suburbs like Hollywood, the center of the movie industry, and Beverly Hills, where famous actors and other celebrities live, have also made Los Angeles a tourist attraction.

**Los Angeles** (officially the **City of Los Angeles** and often known by its initials **L.A.**, is the cultural, financial, and commercial center of Southern California. With a census-estimated 2015 population of 3,971,883,<sup>[10]</sup> it is the second-most populous city in the United States (after New York City) and the most populous city in California. Located in a large coastal basin surrounded on three sides by mountains reaching up to and over 10,000 feet (3,000 m), Los Angeles covers an area of about 469 square miles (1,210 km<sup>2</sup>). The city is the focal point of the larger Los Angeles metropolitan area and the Greater Los Angeles Area region, which contain 13 million and over 18 million people, respectively, as of 2010, making it one of the most populous metropolitan areas in the world as well as the second-largest in the United States and the densest urban area in the United States. Los Angeles is also the seat of Los Angeles County, the most

populated county in the United States. The city's inhabitants are referred to as Angelenos.

Historically home to the Chumash and Tongva, Los Angeles was claimed by Juan Rodríguez Cabrillo for Spain in 1542 along with the rest of what would become Alta California. The city was officially founded on September 4, 1781, by Spanish governor Felipe de Neve. It became a part of Mexico in 1821 following the Mexican War of Independence. In 1848, at the end of the Mexican–American War, Los Angeles and the rest of California were purchased as part of the Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, thereby becoming part of the United States. Los Angeles was incorporated as a municipality on April 4, 1850, five months before California achieved statehood. The discovery of oil in the 1890s brought rapid growth to the city.

Nicknamed the "City of Angels", Los Angeles is known for its Mediterranean climate, ethnic diversity, and sprawling metropolis. The city is also famous as the home of Hollywood, a major center of the American entertainment



industry, and one of the leaders in the world in the creation of motion picture, recorded music, and television productions. Los Angeles also has a diverse economy in culture, media, fashion, science, sports, technology, education, medicine, and research. A global city, it has been ranked 6th in the Global Cities Index and 9th in the Global Economic Power Index. The city is home to renowned institutions covering a broad range of professional and cultural fields, and is one of the most substantial economic engines within the United States.

The city is home to the Kodak Theatre, today known as Dolby Theatre, located close to Hollywood Boulevard in the Hollywood district of Los Angeles. The theater is home of the annual Academy Awards Ceremonies (The Oscars), which were first held there in March 2002, it is the first permanent home for the awards.

## ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

along with ( <i>prep.comb</i> )	birgalikda, baravariga	вместе с, наряду с
celebrity ( <i>n</i> )	taniqli	знаменитость
densest ( <i>adj</i> )	tig‘iz, qalin	плотнейший
economic engine ( <i>word combination</i> )	iqtisodni harakatga soluvchi	экономический двигатель
missionary ( <i>adj, n</i> )	missionerlik	миссионерский, миссионер
motion picture ( <i>word combination</i> )	kinofilm	кинофильм
populous ( <i>adj</i> )	aholisi zich	густонаселенный
renown ( <i>n</i> )	mashhurlik	известность
sprawling ( <i>adj</i> )	uzun, cho‘zilgan	растянутый
suburb ( <i>n</i> )	shahar atrofi, tevarak, atrof	предместья, окрестности

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

➤

- 1 What does “Los Angeles” mean?
- 2 When did it officially become an American city?
- 3 How is it accepted to call the root inhabitants of Los Angeles?
- 4 What was the reason of rapid economic growth of the city in 1890s?

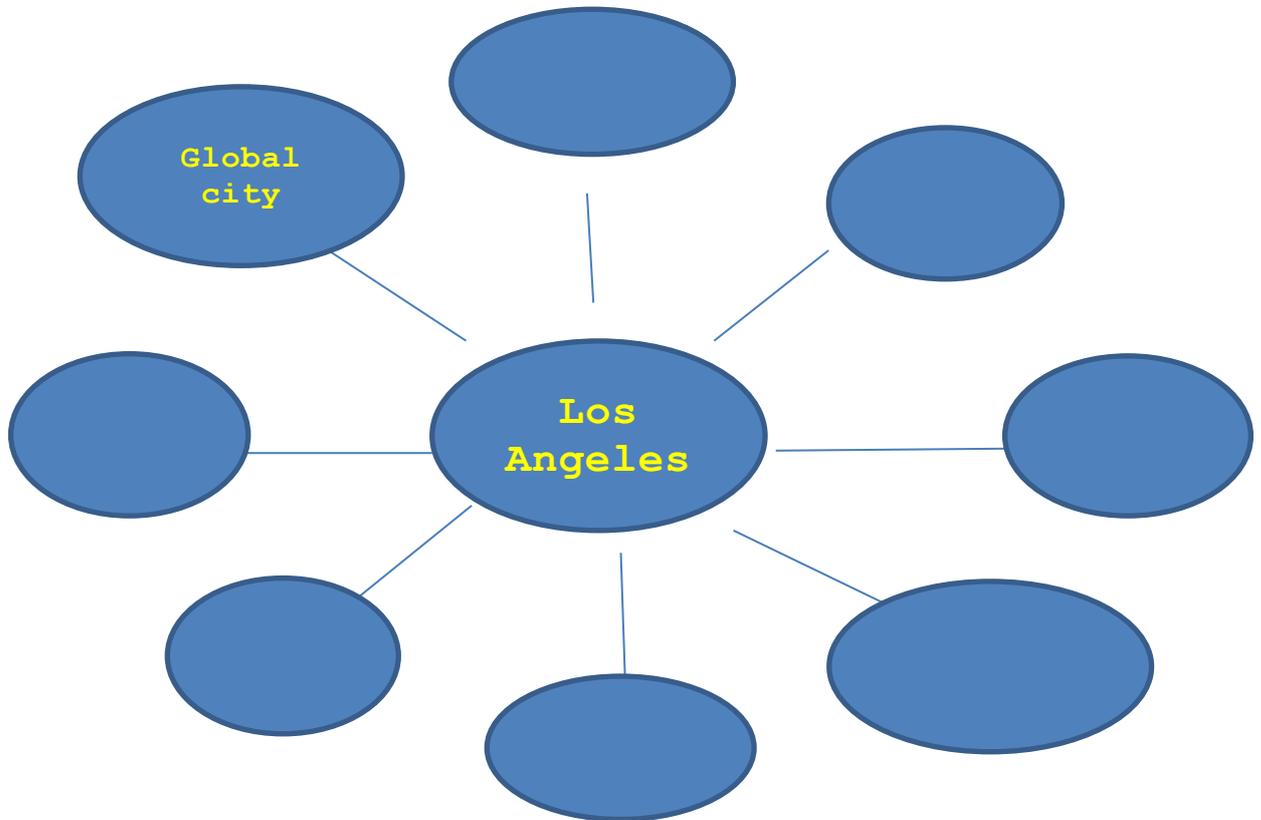
- 5 What kind of tourist destinations do you know in Los Angeles?
- 6 What is the area of Los Angeles?
- 7 What sort of festivals Los Angeles has been a traditional venue for?
- 8 What is the population of Los Angeles?
- 9 When was Los Angeles announced as a municipality officially?
- 10 How was the city ranked according to Economic Index?

➤ *Match the meaning of the phrases on the left (1-10) with phrases on the right (a-j) which express similar ideas*

1	missionaries	a	to give new life, energy, activity, or success to something
2	nickname	b	central and important
3	focal	c	(of two or more items) with each relating to something previously mentioned, in the same order as first mentioned
4	inhabitants	d	to say that something is true or is a fact, although you cannot prove it and other people might not believe it
5	coast	e	the state of being famous
6	respectively	f	the land next to or close to the sea
7	claim	g	an informal name for someone or something, especially a name that you are called by your friends or family, usually based on your real name or your character
8	renowned	h	literary to leave someone forever, especially when they need you
9	forsaken	i	a person or animal that lives in a particular place
10	revitalize	j	a person who has been sent to a foreign country to teach their religion to the people who live there

**BRAINSTORMING**

- *The students are divided into two or three groups and chooses one of the city and brainstorm of its as many factors as possible*



**FIVE MINUTE ESSAY**

*Each member of the group should tell briefly about the city they have chosen, then the group should choose one of the city and give as a task to the next group to write five minute essay*

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

# *The culture*



## *the heritage*



## *the people*



*The United States is called a “melting pot” because people from all the world have mixed together to create modern American society. The earliest immigrants came from every country of the world. And in America individuals of all nations were melted into a new race of men. The millions of immigrants though in the main conforming to the new ways of life which they found there, could not help leaving some impress upon the mixture of which they formed a part.*

*American culture is by no means homogeneous. There are at least six regional cultures: a New England<sup>14</sup>, an Old South<sup>15</sup>, a Middle West, a Rocky Mountain and Great Plains, a Southwest and a Far West culture. In fact, even these can be subdivided.*

*The American English of these regions is not entirely uniform. Everyone is aware that certain features of speech are peculiar to New England and that others are characteristic of the coastal South. Besides, the various Indian influences, American English reflects the other non-English cultures which the colonists met in their conquest of the continent.*

*In the westward expansion of their territory the English-speaking colonists came into contact with French. The French borrowings include words pertaining to exploration and travel or descriptive features of the landscape.*

## **Americans and American culture**

Every nation has different customs and traditions, its own way of life. In Europe there are people who have lived in the same house and been in the same job for 20, 30 or more years. That’s not the American way of life. The Americans love change, they call it the spirit of adventure, a spirit that they think is more characteristic of America than of Europe. They like to move away, to change houses and jobs.

While the Englishman thinks it is ill mannered to ask private questions, the American doesn’t feel that at all. He will tell you all about himself, his wife and family, and ask where you have come from, what your job is, how you like America and how long you are staying. The American prefers sociability. In his home he doesn’t object to being seen by everyone — he actually likes it.

With this sociability goes overwhelming hospitality. A national Thanksgiving Day is perhaps the only holiday spent by the Americans at

---

<sup>13</sup>New England culture - the culture of the north-eastern part of the USA characterised by traditional links with the Old World, especially England;

<sup>14</sup>Old South culture - the culture of the Southern states based on traditions that existed before the Civil War and are still cherished by the Southerners.

home. Table decorations follow a traditional pattern — a harvest of Indian corn, apples, oranges, walnuts and grapes. Flowers also bring the fall scene indoors. The centre piece is the traditional roast turkey.

Still another American tradition concerns Halloween. Its origin dates back hundreds of years to the Druid festival. The Druid New Year began on November 1, marking the beginning of winter and the reign of the Lord of Death. The custom of telling ghost stories on Halloween comes from the Druids. On this occasion children usually wear ghost costumes or false faces. They also carve out rounded eyes in pumpkins and put burning candles inside them to make them visible from far away.

In Texas, where the West begins, the biggest annual festival — the Fat Stock Show — is held. Its rodeo, hold together with the stock show, is the biggest indoor rodeo on the earth.

And, of course, no nation can exist without humour. As they themselves say, an American must have one wife, two cars, three children, four pets, five suits, six acres, seven credit cards — and is lucky to have eight cents in his pocket.

#### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

actually ( <i>adv</i> )	aslida	на самом деле
advent ( <i>n</i> )	kelish	приход, наступление
carve out ( <i>v</i> )	kesib olish	вырезать
candle ( <i>n</i> )	sham	свеча
cent ( <i>n</i> )	sent, chaqa	цент, гроши
concern ( <i>n, v</i> )	bezovtalik, tashvish, daxldor	беспокойство, касаться
conform ( <i>v</i> )	kelmoq	соответствовать

decoration ( <i>n</i> )	bezak	украшение
humour ( <i>n</i> )	yumor, kulgi	юмор
landscape ( <i>n</i> )	manzara	панорама, ландшафт
mixed ( <i>adj</i> )	aralashgan	смешанный
overwhelming ( <i>adj</i> )	aksar. eng ko‘p	подавляющий
pumpkin ( <i>n</i> )	qovoq	тыква
peculiar ( <i>adj</i> )	ajoyib	своеобразный
scene ( <i>n</i> )	ssena, epizod	сцена, эпизод
sociability ( <i>n</i> )	shiqisha olish	коммуникабельность
stock show ( <i>word combination</i> )	fondga oid ko‘rgazma	фондовая выставка
visible ( <i>adj</i> )	ko‘zga ko‘rinadigan, yaqqol	видимый

### **SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:**

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 Why the United States is called “melting pot”?
- 2 What can be inferred from “American culture is by no means homogeneous”?
- 3 Why American English reflects other non-English cultures?
- 4 Does “spirit of adventure” character European way of life?
- 5 Describe how would Americans and Europeans react if they were asked private questions

- 6 Why Thanksgiving is the only holiday for Americans to spend at home?
- 7 Name traditions mentioned in the text.
- 8 What is the relation between Halloween and Druid festival?
- 9 How Americans celebrate Halloween?
- 10 What do Americans think they must have?

➤ Match the meaning of the phrases on the left (1-10) with phrases on the right (a-j) which express similar ideas

1	<b>confer</b>	<b>a</b>	to give a large amount of money to pay for creating a college, hospital, etc. or to provide an income for it
2	<b>endow</b>	<b>b</b>	
3	<b>riot</b>	<b>c</b>	to give new life, energy, activity, or success to something
4	<b>hasten</b>	<b>d</b>	the form of a language that a particular group of speakers use naturally, especially in informal situations
5	<b>virtue</b>	<b>e</b>	to exchange ideas on a particular subject, often in order to reach a decision on what action to take
6	<b>vernacular</b>	<b>f</b>	a good moral quality in a person, or the general quality of being morally good
7	<b>heresy</b>	<b>g</b>	a lot of disagreement or argument about something, usually because it affects or is

			important to many people
<b>8</b>	<b>controversy</b>	<b>h</b>	(the act of having) an opinion or belief that is the opposite of or against what is the official or popular opinion, or an action that shows that you have no respect for the official opinion
<b>9</b>	<b>forsaken</b>	<b>i</b>	to make something happen sooner or more quickly
<b>10</b>	<b>revitalize</b>	<b>j</b>	a noisy, violent, and uncontrolled public meeting

## American National Cuisine



Mainstream American cuisine is similar to that in other Western countries. Wheat is the primary cereal grain with about three-quarters of grain products made of wheat flour and many dishes use indigenous ingredients, such as turkey, venison, potatoes, sweet potatoes, corn, squash, and maple syrup, which were consumed, by Native Americans and early European settlers. These home grown foods are part of a shared national menu on one of America's most popular holidays; Thanksgiving, when some Americans make traditional foods to celebrate the occasion.

Roasted turkey is a traditional menu item of an American Thanksgiving dinner.

Characteristic dishes such as apple pie, fried chicken, pizza, hamburgers, and hot dogs derive from the recipes of various immigrants. French fries, Mexican dishes such as burritos and tacos, and pasta dishes freely adapted from Italian sources are



widely consumed. Americans drink three times as much coffee as tea. Marketing by U.S. industries is largely responsible for making orange juice and milk ubiquitous breakfast beverages.

American eating habits owe a great deal to that of their British culinary roots with some variations. Although American lands could grow newer vegetables that Britain could not, most colonists would not eat these new foods until accepted by Europeans. Over time American foods changed to a point that food critic, John L. Hess stated in 1972: "Our founding fathers were as far superior to our present political leaders in the quality of their food as they were in the quality of their prose and intelligence".



The American fast food industry, the world's largest, pioneered the drive-through format in the 1940s. Fast food consumption has sparked health concerns. During the 1980s and 1990s, Americans' caloric intake rose 24%; frequent dining at fast food

outlets is associated with what public health officials call the American "obesity epidemic". Highly sweetened soft drinks are widely popular, and sugared beverages account for nine percent of American caloric intake.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

beverage ( <i>n</i> )	salqin ichimlik	напиток
burritos ( <i>n</i> )	go'sh va pishloq solingan	буррито
	kulcha	
cereal ( <i>n</i> )	boshoqli o'simliklar, bo'tqa	злаки, каша
chicken ( <i>n</i> )	tovuq	курица
consume ( <i>v</i> )	istemol qilmog	потреблять
grain ( <i>n</i> )	bug'doy	зерно

indigenous ( <i>adj</i> )	mahalliy	местный
intake ( <i>n</i> )	iste'mol, ehtiyojga ishlatish	потребление
mainstream ( <i>n</i> )	asosiy yo'nalish	основное направление
obesity ( <i>n</i> )	semirib ketmoq	ожирение
pasta ( <i>n</i> )	makaron mahsulotlari	макаронные изделия
root ( <i>n</i> )	ildiz, o'zak, manba	корень, источник
similar ( <i>adj</i> )	o'xshash, monand	аналогичный
superior ( <i>adj</i> )	a'lo darajadagi	превосходящий
sweetened ( <i>adj</i> )	shirin qilingan	подслащенный
taco ( <i>n</i> )	yupqa xamirga o'ralgan go'sy (meksikancha lavash)	тако (мексиканский лаваш)
ubiquitous ( <i>adj</i> )	har yerda hozir	вездесущий
venison ( <i>n</i> )	bug'u go'shti	оленина

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 In which holidays do Americans cook their traditional meals?
- 2 Name the main cuisine of Thanksgiving Day.
- 3 Where did Mexican dishes come from?
- 4 What products do US industries tend to manufacture for its population mostly?
- 5 What kind of impact had the British Culinary on the creation of American meals?
- 6 Describe the citation of food critic John L. Hess.
- 7 When was the inception of Fast Food development?

- 8 Describe the results of excessive fast food consumption in the US.
- 9 What does the term ‘obesity epidemic’ mean?
- 10 Tell the percentage of caloric intake of sweetened soft drinks and beverages among Americans.

➤ *Match the meaning of the phrases on the left (1-10) with phrases on the right (a-j) which express similar ideas*

<b>1</b>	<b>cuisine</b>	<b>a</b>	a seed or seeds from a plant, especially a plantlike a grass such as rice or wheat
<b>2</b>	<b>cereal</b>	<b>b</b>	a style of cooking
<b>3</b>	<b>grain</b>	<b>c</b>	a plant that is grown to produce grain
<b>4</b>	<b>indigenous</b>	<b>d</b>	to crush something into a flat shape
<b>5</b>	<b>squash</b>	<b>e</b>	to change something to suit different conditions or uses
<b>6</b>	<b>immigrants</b>	<b>f</b>	to eat or drink, especially a lot of something
<b>7</b>	<b>adapted</b>	<b>g</b>	a person who has come to a different country in order to live there permanently
<b>8</b>	<b>consume</b>	<b>h</b>	connected with cooking or kitchens
<b>9</b>	<b>beverage</b>	<b>i</b>	naturally existing in a place or country rather than arriving from another place
<b>10</b>	<b>obesity</b>	<b>j</b>	any type of drink except water

## Customs and traditions

The culture of the United States of America is primarily a mix of various European, Native American, African, Asian, and Polynesian cultures. It also has its own social and cultural characteristics, such as dialect, music, arts, social habits, cuisine, and folklore. The United States of

America is an ethnically and racially diverse country as a result of large-scale migration from many countries throughout its history.

Its chief early European influences came from English settlers of colonial America during British rule. Due to colonial ties with Britain that spread the English language, British culture, legal system and other cultural inheritances, had a formative influence. Other important influences came from other parts of Europe, especially Germany.

Original elements also play a strong role, such as Jeffersonian democracy. Thomas Jefferson's *Notes on the State of Virginia* was perhaps the first influential domestic cultural critique by an American and was written in reaction to the views of some influential Europeans that America's native flora, fauna, including humans, were degenerate.

American culture includes both conservative and liberal elements, scientific and religious competitiveness, political structures, risk taking and free expression, materialist and moral elements. Despite certain consistent ideological principles (e.g. individualism, egalitarianism, and faith in freedom and democracy), American culture has a variety of expressions due to its geographical scale and demographic diversity. The flexibility of U.S. culture and its highly symbolic nature lead some researchers to categorize American culture as a mythic identity; others see it as American exceptionalism.

It also includes elements that evolved from Indigenous Americans, and other ethnic cultures—most prominently the culture of African Americans, cultures from Latin America, and Asian American cultures. Many American cultural elements, especially from popular culture, have spread across the globe through modern mass media.

The United States has traditionally been thought of as a melting pot. However, beginning in the 1960s and continuing on in the present day, the country trends towards cultural diversity, pluralism, and the image of a salad bowl instead. Due to the extent of American culture, there are many integrated but unique social subcultures within the United States. The cultural affiliations

an individual in the United States may have commonly depend on social class, political orientation and a multitude of demographic characteristics such as religious background, occupation and ethnic group membership.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

affiliate ( <i>v</i> )	qo‘shmoq	присоединяться
background ( <i>n</i> )	asl sabab, kelib chiqish, nasl-nasab	происхождение
common ( <i>adj</i> )	odatiy	обычный
critique ( <i>n</i> )	tanqid	критика
egalitarianism ( <i>n</i> )	tenglik tarafdorlari	эгалитаризм
especial ( <i>adj</i> )	maxsus	особый
faith ( <i>n</i> )	ishonch, e’tiqod	вера
habit ( <i>n</i> )	odat	привычка
indigenous ( <i>adj</i> )	mahalliy, tabiiy	местный, природный
multitude ( <i>n</i> )	ko‘pgina, bir talay	множество
spread ( <i>v</i> )	tarqalish, yoyilib ketmoq	распространение, распространяться
subcultures ( <i>n</i> )	madaniyat tarmoqlari	субкультуры
tie ( <i>v</i> )	bog‘lanish, aloqa	связывать

### SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:

➤ *Discuss the questions below:*

- 1 What type of cultures had the influence in the formation of the American culture?

- 2 Describe Jeffersonian Democracy.
- 3 How US culture features are spreading all over the world?
- 4 Describe specifically elements evolved from Indigenous Cultures?
- 5 What sort of expression was used to describe the United States?
- 6 When did the integrating new trends to American culture begin?
- 7 Tell the cardinal cultural affiliation features an individual can depend on in the US.
- 8 What does 'American Exceptionalism' mean?
- 9 Point out another European country which had prime as well as fundamental impact on American culture.
- 10 What sort of demographic characteristics does an individual may hinge on?

➤ *Match the meaning of the phrases on the left (1-10) with phrases on the right (a-j) which express similar ideas*

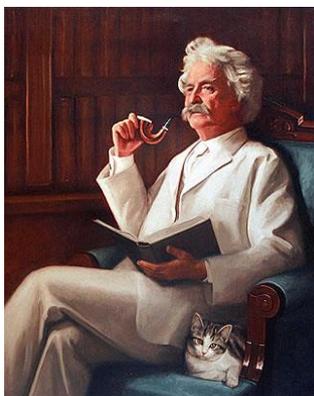
<b>1</b>	<b>primarily</b>	<b>a</b>	relating to a particular race of people
<b>2</b>	<b>ethnically</b>	<b>b</b>	mainly
<b>3</b>	<b>racially</b>	<b>c</b>	money or objects that someone gives you when they die
<b>4</b>	<b>chief</b>	<b>d</b>	imaginary or not real
<b>5</b>	<b>inheritances</b>	<b>e</b>	very well known and important
<b>6</b>	<b>conservative</b>	<b>f</b>	a large number of people or things
<b>7</b>	<b>mythic</b>	<b>g</b>	a connection with a political party or religion, or with a larger organization





# *Famous American people*

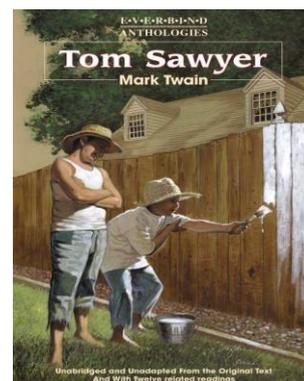
## **Mark Twain**



Mark Twain was born in 1835 in the USA. His real name was Samuel Langhorne Clemens. He spent his boyhood in the small town of Hannibal on the Mississippi River. When he was 12, his father died. After his father's death, he left school and went to work. For ten years, Twain worked as a printer in different towns and cities. Later he became a pilot on the Mississippi River.

His first short story was published in 1867 under the pen name "Mark Twain". The name Mark Twain comes from a term used by riverboat pilots to call out the depth of a river. After his first short story, he continued writing under his name and he became well-known as the best short story writer in America.

In 1876 he published "The Adventures of Tom Sawyer", in which he described the life of a boy in a Mississippi River town at the time of his own boyhood. Shortly after this, he published a book about one of Tom Sawyer's friends, "Huckleberry Finn".



Mark Twain is known as America's greatest humorist, and his works are full of humour, from jokes to satire. He belongs to those writers of the past whose works never age. His works have been published in 25 languages. He died in 1910.

### **ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT**

adventure (n)

sarguzasht

приключение

age (v)

qarimoq, eskirmoq

стареть

appoint (n)	tayinlamoq, belgilamoq	назначать
advise (v)	maslahat bermoq	советовать
announce (v)	e'lon qilmoq	объявлять
belong (v)	mansub bo'lmoq, xos bo'lmoq, ega bo'lmoq	принадлежать, относиться
depth (n)	chuqurlik	глубина
short story writer (w.comb)	qisqa hikoyalar muallifi	автор коротких рассказов

## Bill Gates

*If you born poor, it's not your mistake, but if you die poor, it your mistake.*

*Bill Gates*



William Henry "Bill" Gates III (born October 28, 1955) is an American business magnate, investor, author, and philanthropist. In 1975, Gates and Paul Allen co-founded Microsoft, which became the world's largest PC software company. During his career at Microsoft, Gates held the

positions of chairman, CEO and chief software architect, and was the largest individual shareholder until May 2014. Gates has authored and co-authored several books.

Since 1987, Gates has been included in the Forbes list of the world's wealthiest people and was the wealthiest from 1995 to 2007, again in 2009, and has been since 2014. Between 2009 and 2014, his wealth doubled from US \$40 billion to more than US \$82 billion. Between 2013 and 2014, his wealth increased by US\$15 billion. Gates is currently the richest person in the world, with an estimated net worth of US \$86.9 billion as of April 2017. In 2009, Gates and Warren Buffett founded The Giving Pledge, whereby they, and other billionaires, pledge to give at least half of their wealth to philanthropy.

Gates is one of the best-known entrepreneurs of the personal computer revolution. He has been criticized for his business tactics, which have been considered anti-competitive, an opinion that has in some cases been upheld by numerous court rulings. Later in his career, Gates pursued a number of philanthropic endeavors, donating large amounts of money to various charitable organizations and scientific research programs through the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation, established in 2000.

Gates stepped down as chief executive officer of Microsoft in January 2000. He remained as chairman and created the position of chief software architect for himself. In June 2006, Gates announced that he would have transitioning from full-time work at Microsoft to part-time work, and full-time work at the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation. He gradually transferred his duties to Ray Ozzie and Craig Mundie. He stepped down as chairman of Microsoft in February 2014, taking on a new post as technology adviser to support then newly appointed CEO Satya Nadella.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT

author (n, v)	muallif, mualliflik	автор, авторствовать
charitable organizations (w.comb)	xayriya tashkilotlari	благотворительные организации
chief executive officer (w.comb)	kompaniya direktori	директор компании
co-author (n, v)	hammuallif, hammualliflikda yaratmoq	соавтор, создавать в соавторстве
double (v, adj)	ikki marta oshirmoq, ikki hissa	удваиваться, двойной
duty (n)	majburiyat	обязанность

endeavor (v, n)	zo‘r bermoq, harakat qilmoq	прилагать усилия, старание
entrepreneur (n)	tadbirkor	предприниматель
gradually (adv)	doimiy	постепенно
magnate (n)	magnat	магнат
philanthropic (adj)	insonparvar	человеколюбивый
philanthropist (n)	saxovatpesha	филантроп
pledge (n, v)	garovga qo‘yish, kafolat	залог, поручаться
shareholder (n)	aksioner	акционер
software (n)	dastur	программа
step down (v)	tushmoq, pasaymoq	спуститься
technology adviser (w.comb)	texnologik konsultant	технологический консультант
transfer (v)	sanamoq, o‘tkazmoq, ko‘chirmoq	перечислить
transition (n)	o‘tish, otish joyi	переход
uphold (v)	qo‘llab-quvvatlamoq	поддерживать
whereby (conj)	-ga muvofiq	согласно которому

### **SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:**

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 When and where Mark Twain was born?
- 2 What was his pseudonym?
- 3 What was the reason of working as a printer for ten years?
- 4 When did the book ‘Adventures of Tom Sawyer’ face publication?
- 5 What kind of characteristics made the Mark Twain famous?
- 6 How many languages Twain’s works had been published in?

- 7 When and where Bill Gates was born?
- 8 When was Gates included to the list of Forbes?
- 9 What reason served for Bill Gates to be criticized?
- 10 When Microsoft was established? Name the second counterpart co-founder.

➤ Match the meaning of the phrases on the left (1-10) with phrases on the right (a-j) which express similar ideas

<b>1</b>	<b>boyhood</b>	<b>a</b>	a person who writes or tells funny stories
<b>2</b>	<b>adventures</b>	<b>b</b>	the instructions that control what a computer does; computer programs
<b>3</b>	<b>humorist</b>	<b>c</b>	a person who owns shares in a company and therefore gets part of the company's profits and the right to vote on how the company is controlled
<b>4</b>	<b>satire</b>	<b>d</b>	a serious or formal promise, especially one to give money or to be a friend, or something that you give as a sign that you will keep a promise
<b>5</b>	<b>magnate</b>	<b>e</b>	officially chosen for a job or responsibility
<b>6</b>	<b>software</b>	<b>f</b>	an unusual, exciting, and possibly dangerous activity, such as a trip or experience, or the excitement produced by such an activity
<b>7</b>	<b>shareholder</b>	<b>g</b>	the giving away of money, esp. in large amounts, to organizations that help people
<b>8</b>	<b>pledge</b>	<b>h</b>	the period when a person is a boy, and not yet a man, or the state of being a boy
<b>9</b>	<b>philanthropy</b>	<b>i</b>	a person who is very rich and successful in business or industry
<b>10</b>	<b>appointed</b>	<b>j</b>	a way of criticizing people or ideas in a humorous way, or a piece of writing or play that uses this style



# *Science, education, and sport*

## **Science in the USA**



From its emergence as an independent nation, the United States has encouraged science and invention. It has done this by promoting a free flow of ideas, by encouraging the growth of "useful knowledge," and by welcoming creative people from all over the world. The United States Constitution itself reflects the desire to encourage scientific activity. It gives Congress the power "to promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries." This clause is the basis of the U.S. patent and trademark system.

Two of America's founding fathers were actually scientists of some repute. Benjamin Franklin conducted a series of experiments that proved that lightning is a form of electricity. Thomas Jefferson was a student of agriculture who introduced various types of rice, olive trees and grasses into the New World.

During the 19th century, Britain, France and Germany were the leading sources of new ideas in science and mathematics; but if the United States lagged behind in the formulation of theory, it excelled in using applied science. Because Americans lived so far from the well-springs of Western science and manufacturing, they often had to figure out their own ways of doing things. The result was a flow of important inventions. The great American inventors include Robert Fulton (the steamboat); Samuel F.B. Morse (the telegraph); Eli Whitney (the cotton gin); Cyrus McCormick (the reaper); the Wright Brothers (the powered flying machine) and Thomas Alva Edison,

the most fertile of them all, with more than a thousand inventions credited to his name.

In the second half of the twentieth century, American scientists were increasingly recognized for their contributions to "pure" science, the formulation of concepts and theories. The changing pattern can be seen in the winners of the Nobel Prizes in physics and chemistry. During the first half-century of Nobel Prizes -- from 1901 to 1950 -- American winners were in a distinct minority in the science categories. Since 1950, Americans have won approximately half of the Nobel Prizes awarded in the sciences.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT

applied science (w.comb)	amaliy fan	прикладная наука
approximately (adv)	namunali ravishda, taxminan	примерно
concept (n)	konsepsiya, mohiyat	концепция, понятие
contribution (n)	hissa qo‘shmoq	вклад
emergence (n)	paydo bo‘lmoq, yuzaga chiqmoq	появление
fertile (adj)	unumdor	плодородный
figure out (v)	hisoblab chiqarmoq	вычислять
flow (n, v)	oqim	поток, течь
lag (n, v)	kechikmoq, kechik kelmoq	запаздывание, запаздывать
lightning (n)	chaqmoq, yashin	молния
olive (adj, n)	zaytunga oid, och jigarrang	оливковый
promote (v)	yordamlshmoq, yordam bermoq	содействовать

pure (adj)	sof	ЧИСТЫЙ
reflect (adj)	aks etmoq	отражать
secure (adj)	xavfsiz	БЕЗОПАСНЫЙ
trademark (n)	tovar belgisi	ТОВАРНЫЙ ЗНАК

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 What is the clause, the fundamental basis of the US patent and trademark system.
- 2 Who did a series of experiments that proved that lightning is the kind of electricity?
- 3 Which countries were the leading in science and mathematics during the 19th century?
- 4 What results of American inventors and new approach toward to science can you tell about?.
- 5 Who was the inventor of telegraph?
- 6 Who are the inventors of flying engines as well as first airplane?
- 7 Who is the most prolific inventor who had a great deal of impact on science.
- 8 Was there the period of time when American Nobel prize winners were negligible?
- 9 Who was the inventor of cotton gin?
- 10 What spheres does the 'Nobel Prize' include?

➤ Match the meaning of the phrases on the left (1-10) with phrases on the right (a-j) which express similar ideas

<b>1</b>	<b>emergence</b>	<b>a</b>	to make someone more likely to do something, or to make something more likely to happen
<b>2</b>	<b>encourage</b>	<b>b</b>	Fertile land can produce a large number of good quality crops
<b>3</b>	<b>invention</b>	<b>c</b>	the process of finding information, a place, or an object, especially for the first time, or the thing that is found
<b>4</b>	<b>discoveries</b>	<b>d</b>	something that has never been made before, or the process of creating something that has never been made before
<b>5</b>	<b>repute</b>	<b>e</b>	a bad, good, etc. reputation
<b>6</b>	<b>fertile</b>	<b>f</b>	a principle or idea
<b>7</b>	<b>contribution</b>	<b>g</b>	the fact of something becoming known or starting to exist
<b>8</b>	<b>concept</b>	<b>h</b>	close to a particular number or time although not exactly that number or time
<b>9</b>	<b>distinct</b>	<b>i</b>	something that you contribute or do to help produce or achieve something together with other people, or to help make something successful
<b>10</b>	<b>approximately</b>	<b>j</b>	clearly noticeable; that certainly exists

## Education of the US



Education in the United States is provided by public, private, and home schools.

State governments set overall educational standards, often mandate standardized tests for K–12 public school systems, and supervise, usually through a board of regents, state colleges and universities. Funding comes from

the state, local, and federal government.

Private schools are generally free to determine their own curriculum and staffing policies, with voluntary accreditation available through independent regional accreditation authorities. About 87% of school-age children attend public schools, about 10% attend private schools, and roughly 3% are home-schooled.

Education is compulsory over an age range starting between five and eight and ending somewhere between ages sixteen and eighteen, depending on the state. This requirement can be satisfied in public schools, state-certified private schools, or an approved home school program. In most schools, education is divided into three levels: elementary school, middle or junior high school, and high school. Children are usually divided by age groups into grades, ranging from kindergarten and first grade for the youngest children, up to twelfth grade as the final year of high school.

There are also a large number and wide variety of publicly and privately administered institutions of higher education throughout the country. Post-secondary education, divided into college, as the first tertiary degree, and graduate school, is described in a



separate sThe United States spends more per student on education than any

other country. In 2014, the Pearson/Economist Intelligence Unit rated US education as 14th best in the world, just behind Russia. In 2015, the Programme for International Student Assessment rated U.S. high school students #40 globally in Math and #24 in Science and Reading. The President of the National Center on Education and the Economy said of the results, "the United States cannot long operate a world-class economy if our workers are, as the OECD statistics show, among the worst-educated in the world." U.S. Education Secretary John B. King, Jr. acknowledged the results in conceding U.S. students were well behind their peers. According to a report published by the U.S. News & World Report, of the top ten colleges and universities in the world, eight are American. (The other two are Oxford and Cambridge, in the United Kingdom.)

#### **ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:**

acknowledge ( <i>v</i> )	tan olmoq	признавать
compulsory ( <i>adj</i> )	bajarilishi	обязательное
	lozim	
	bo‘lgan	
curriculum ( <i>n</i> )	o‘quv rejasi	учебный план
graduate school ( <i>w.comb</i> )	oliy maktab	высшая школа
junior high school ( <i>w.comb</i> )	o‘rta maktab	средняя школа
level ( <i>n</i> )	daraja	уровень
mandate standardized tests ( <i>w.comb</i> )	majburiy standart testlar	обязательные стандартизированные тесты
peer ( <i>n</i> )	hamteng	сверстник
private	ayrim,	частный

	shaxsiy	
programme for	talabalarni	программа для
international student	xalqaro	международной
assessment ( <i>w.comb</i> )	baholash	оценки студентов
	dasturi	
range ( <i>n, v</i> )	spektr,	спектр,
	tasniflanmoq	классифицироваться
rate ( <i>n, v</i> )	baho,	цена, оценивать
	baholamoq	
satisfy ( <i>v</i> )	qoniqtirmoq,	удовлетворять,
	talabga	отвечать
	javob	требованиям
	bermoq	
staff ( <i>n</i> )	xodimlar	штат сотрудников
	shtati	
supervise ( <i>v</i> )	nazorat	контролировать
	qilmoq	
voluntary ( <i>adj</i> )	ko'ngilli	добровольный

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 How many educational settings do exist in the United States?
- 2 Who are the organizers of the standardized tests in the US?
- 3 How many students do attend the public schools?
- 4 What schools do satisfy the requirements of the compulsory education?

- 5 How many subdivisions do most US schools have?
- 6 What level US education was rated according to Economist Intelligence Unit in 2014?
- 7 What did the president of the National Center of education and Economy say about the results of education in the US?
- 8 Tell the US high school students' level in math, science and reading according to PISA?
- 9 Which report proves the fact that eight top colleges and universities are located in the United States out of ten?
- 10 Point out another two top universities according to special report.

➤ *Match the meaning of the phrases on the left (1-10) with phrases on the right (a-j) which express similar ideas*

1	<b>education</b>	<b>a</b>	existing or happening independently or in a different physical space
2	<b>provide</b>	<b>b</b>	o (cause to) work, be in action or have an effect
3	<b>mandate</b>	<b>c</b>	of the lowest quality, or the most unpleasant, difficult, or severe
4	<b>through</b>	<b>d</b>	relating to a third level or stage
5	<b>roughly</b>	<b>e</b>	If something is compulsory, you must do it because of a rule or law
6	<b>compulsory</b>	<b>f</b>	approximately
7	<b>tertiary</b>	<b>g</b>	from one end or side of something to the other
8	<b>worst</b>	<b>h</b>	the authority given to an elected group of people, such as a government, to perform an action or govern a country

9	operate	i	to give someone something that they need
10	separate	j	the process of teaching or learning, especially in a school or college, or the knowledge that you get from this

## Harvard University



Harvard University is devoted to excellence in teaching, learning, and research, and to developing leaders in many disciplines who make a difference globally. The University, which is

based in Cambridge and Boston, Massachusetts, has an enrollment of over 20,000 degree candidates, including undergraduate, graduate, and professional students. Harvard has more than 360,000 alumni around the world.

Harvard is the oldest institution of higher education in the United States, established in 1636 by vote of the Great and General Court of the Massachusetts Bay Colony. It was named after the College's first benefactor, the young minister John Harvard of Charlestown, who upon his death in 1638 left his library and half his estate to the institution. A statue of John Harvard stands today in front of University Hall in Harvard Yard, and is perhaps the University's best known landmark.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

alumni (*n*)

bitiruvchilar (*sobiq*)

выпускники (бывшие)

be named after (*v*)

sharafiga nomlamoq

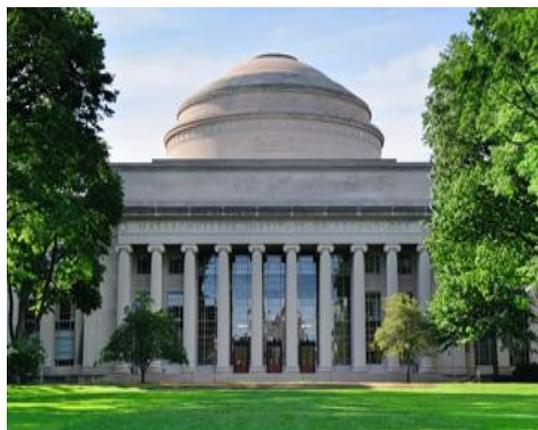
быть названным в

		честь
discipline ( <i>n</i> )	intizom	дисциплина, предмет
devote ( <i>v</i> )	farq	разница
enrollment ( <i>n</i> )	qabul qilmoq, kiritmoq	зачисление
graduate ( <i>n</i> )	bitiruvchi	выпускник
estate ( <i>n</i> )	mulk	имущество
great and general court	katta va umumiy sud	большой и общий суд
Massachusetts bay colony	Massachuset ko'rfazi koloniyasi	колония Массачусетского залива
undergraduate ( <i>n</i> )	talaba	студент (бакалавр)
vote ( <i>n, v</i> )	ovoz berish	голос, голосование
yard ( <i>n</i> )	hovli, joy	двор, <b>йард</b>

## Massachusetts Institute of Technology

The Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) is a private research university in Cambridge, Massachusetts, often cited as one of the world's most prestigious universities.

Founded in 1861 in response to the increasing industrialization of the United



States, MIT adopted a European polytechnic university model and stressed laboratory instruction in applied science and engineering. Researchers worked on computers, radar, and inertial guidance during World War II and the Cold

War. Post-war defense research contributed to the rapid expansion of the faculty and campus under James Killian. The current 168-acre (68.0 ha) campus opened in 1916 and extends over 1 mile (1.6 km) along the northern bank of the Charles River basin.

The Institute is traditionally known for its research and education in the physical sciences and engineering, and more recently in biology, economics, linguistics, and management as well. For several years, MIT's School of Engineering has been ranked first in various international and national university rankings, and the Institute is also often ranked among the world's top universities overall. The "Engineers" compete in 31 sports, most teams of which compete in the NCAA Division III's New England Women's and Men's Athletic Conference; rowing programs compete as part of the EARC and EAWRC. As of 2015, 85 Nobel laureates, 52 National Medal of Science recipients, 65 Marshall Scholars, 45 Rhodes Scholars, 38 MacArthur Fellows, 34 astronauts, 19 Turing award winners, 16 Chief Scientists of the U.S. Air Force, and 6 Fields Medalists have been affiliated with MIT. The school has a strong entrepreneurial culture, and the aggregated revenues of companies founded by MIT alumni would rank as the eleventh-largest economy in the world

#### **ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:**

aggregate ( <i>v, n</i> )	hammasi, barchasi	агрегировать, совокупность
astronaut ( <i>n</i> )	kosmonavt	космонавт
affiliate ( <i>n, v</i> )	filial, qo‘shilmoq, birlashmoq	филиал, присоединяться
cite ( <i>n, v</i> )	havola qilmoq, sitata keltirmoq	ссылка, цитировать

compete ( <i>v</i> )	musobaqalashmoq	соревноваться	
inertial guidance ( <i>word combination</i> )	inersiyali boshqaruv	инерциальное наведение	
prestigious ( <i>adj</i> )	nufuzli	престижный	
recipient ( <i>n</i> )	qabul qilib oluvchi	получатель	
rowing ( <i>n</i> )	eshkak eshish	гребля	
turing award winners ( <i>word combination</i> )	tyuring mukofoti laureati	лауреаты тьюринга	премии

### **SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:**

➤ *Discuss the questions below*

- 1 When was the Harvard university established?
- 2 Where did the name of the university come from?
- 3 Where is the statue of John Harvard located?
- 4 When was MIT founded?
- 5 What sort of projects did researchers do during the World War ii and Cold war?
- 6 Which subject researches did make the university so popular?
- 7 Describe the MIT's economical strides.
- 8 Tell the awards that the university had taken for a long time.
- 9 What is the area of MIT's campus?
- 10 What sort of method did the university adopt from Europeans?

➤ Match the meaning of the phrases on the left (1-10) with phrases on the right (a-j) which express similar ideas

<b>1</b>	<b>devote</b>	<b>a</b>	someone who gives money to help an organization, society, or person
<b>2</b>	<b>excellence</b>	<b>b</b>	the increase of something in size, number, or importance
<b>3</b>	<b>disciplines</b>	<b>c</b>	a particular position, higher or lower than others
<b>4</b>	<b>benefactor</b>	<b>d</b>	to try to be more successful than someone or something else
<b>5</b>	<b>rapid</b>	<b>e</b>	the quality of being excellent
<b>6</b>	<b>expansion</b>	<b>f</b>	a line of things, people, animals, etc. arranged next to each other
<b>7</b>	<b>rank</b>	<b>g</b>	fast or sudden
<b>8</b>	<b>compete</b>	<b>h</b>	to give your time or effort completely to something you believe in or to a person, or to use a particular amount of time or energy doing something
<b>9</b>	<b>row</b>	<b>i</b>	something formed by adding together several amounts or things
<b>10</b>	<b>aggregate</b>	<b>j</b>	training that makes people more willing to obey or more able to control themselves, often in the form of rules, and punishments if these are broken, or the behavior produced by this training

## Sport in the USA



Sport is an integral part of education in American schools and universities. Students usually learn two or more ball games, like football, rugby or basketball.

Then at high school the best players in every school form teams. Every team has its own symbol and a supporting group which is called cheerleaders. Girls who are cheerleaders usually wear clothes in the same colours as the students of their team. They learn different dances, jumps, acrobatic stunts and cheers. It takes a lot of time, practice and energy to be good at cheerleading. But today the world of cheerleaders no longer means sideline squads that exist just to support other teams. They are teams enjoying full rights, teams of the same importance as those football and basketball ones which they traditionally cheer. College and high school cheerleaders compete at national championships.

The most popular spectacular sports in the United States are football, baseball, basketball and hockey. As for the top mass sports, they are swimming, cycling and calisthenics.

American football derives from the English game — rugby. It isn't similar to soccer except some details, like the number of players and the size of the field. It is a far more violent game which requires great physical power and endurance.

Baseball is one of the most popular American team games. The first American baseball match was held in 1839 in New York. Baseball is a bat-and-ball game played by two teams of nine players each. The aim is to score runs by hitting a thrown ball with a bat and touching a series of four bases arranged at the corners of a ninety-foot square. American children of 8 years old can join certain leagues where they are taught by coaches. Every player

and coach must wear a particular uniform: a shirt, pants, baseball cleats (specific shoes worn by the player for better traction with the earth) and a baseball cap designed to shade the eyes from the sun. Nowadays baseball caps are widespread in our everyday life. Catchers have to wear protective helmets with face masks and a special catcher's mitt.

Basketball is a game which was invented in America in 1891. It is a team sport in which two teams of five players each try to score points by throwing or "shooting" a ball through the top of a basketball hoop while following a set of rules. Basketball is one of the world's most widely viewed games nowadays. In 1946 the Basketball Association of America (BAA) was formed. Three years later the BAA merged with the National Basketball League to form the National Basketball Association (NBA). The NBA is famous for many outstanding players, including Larry Bird, Earvin Johnson and Michael Jordan.

A healthy way of life is in fashion now everywhere around the world. There are also many other sports that attract millions of the Americans. Such sports as swimming, track-and-field, skiing, skating, rowing and sailing enjoy great popularity in the USA.

#### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

calisthenics ( <i>n</i> )	jismoniy tayyorgarlik, ritmik gimnastika	физподготовка, ритмическая гимнастика
cheerleader ( <i>n</i> )	muxlis	болельщик
cycling ( <i>n</i> )	velosipedda yurish	езда на велосипеде
helmet ( <i>n</i> )	shlem, maxsus bosh kiyim	шлем
hit ( <i>n, v</i> )	zarb, zarb bilan urmoq	удар, ударять

hoop ( <i>n</i> )	gardish, chambarak	обруч
join ( <i>v</i> )	birlashish, qo‘shilmoq	присоединиться
league ( <i>n</i> )	liga	лига
merge ( <i>v</i> )	tutashmoq, quyilmoq	сливаться
practice ( <i>n, v</i> )	amaliyot, tajriba	практика, опыт
right ( <i>n</i> )	huquq	право
shade ( <i>n, v</i> )	soya, ko‘lanka	тень, затенять
sideline ( <i>n</i> )	qo‘shimcha ish, yon tomondagi liniya	боковая линия
skating ( <i>n</i> )	konkida uchmoq	катание на коньках
skiing ( <i>n</i> )	chang‘ida uchmoq	кататься на лыжах
spectacular	kishini o‘ziga tortadigan, maroqli	захватывающий
stunt ( <i>v</i> )	tryuklar bajarish, nomerlar ko‘rsatish	делать трюки, показывать номера
squad ( <i>n</i> )	komanda, otryad	команда, отряд
throw ( <i>v</i> )	tashlamoq	бросать
touch ( <i>n, v</i> )	tegish, paypaslab ko‘rish	прикосновение, дотрагиваться
track ( <i>n, v</i> )	iz, kuzatmoq	след, следить
violent ( <i>adj</i> )	shiddatli, darg‘azab	яростный
wear ( <i>v</i> )	kiyish, kiyib yurish	носить

## SPEAKING AND VOCABUARY ACTIVITIES:

➤ *Discuss on the questions below*

- 1 What is the role of sport in education in the USA?
- 2 Who are the cheerleaders or squads?
- 3 What are the most popular spectacular sports in the United States?
- 4 What is the difference of American football from British football?
- 5 When was the first American baseball match held?
- 6 What kind of game is baseball?
- 7 Where and when was basketball originated?
- 8 What kind of game is basketball?
- 9 Who are the most famous American basketball players?
- 10 What other types of sport attract Americans?

➤ *Match the meaning of the phrases on the left (1-10) with phrases on the right (a-j) which express similar ideas*

<b>1</b>	<b>integral</b>	<b>a</b>	clearly very much better than what is usual
<b>2</b>	<b>cheerleaders</b>	<b>b</b>	a ring of wood, metal, or plastic
<b>3</b>	<b>sideline</b>	<b>c</b>	existing or happening in many places and/or among many people
<b>4</b>	<b>squads</b>	<b>d</b>	a game played between two teams of eleven people, where each team tries to win by kicking a ball into the other team's goal
<b>5</b>	<b>spectacular</b>	<b>e</b>	(a system of) simple physical exercises that are done to make the body firm, able to stretch easily, and more attractive

<b>6</b>	<b>calisthenics</b>	<b>f</b>	very exciting to look at
<b>7</b>	<b>soccer</b>	<b>g</b>	a small group of people trained to work together as a unit
<b>8</b>	<b>widespread</b>	<b>h</b>	an activity that you do as well as your main job
<b>9</b>	<b>hoop</b>	<b>i</b>	a person, usually a woman or girl in an organized group, who leads the crowd in shouting encouragement and supporting a team at a sports event
<b>10</b>	<b>outstanding</b>	<b>j</b>	necessary and important as a part of a whole

## **LEARNING WITH MODERN PEDAGOGICAL TECHNOLOGIES**

### ***CONCEPTUAL TABLE***

- *Fill in the table with information of the US in different spheres*

<b>Education</b>	<b>Science</b>	<b>Sport</b>	<b>Art</b>

### ***FREE WRITING***

- *In 250 words write an essay on the topic “If I had a chance to visit America”, describing the experience you are going to expect*

---



---



---



# *Other English Speaking Countries*

## **Canada**



*The history of Canada covers the period from the arrival of Paleo-Indians thousands of years ago to the present day. Prior to European colonization, the lands encompassing present-day Canada were inhabited for millennia by Aboriginal peoples, with distinct trade networks, spiritual beliefs, and styles of social organization. Some of these civilizations had long faded by the time of the first European arrivals and have been discovered through archaeological investigations.*

*Starting in the late 15th century, French and British expeditions explored, colonized, and fought over various places within North America in what constitutes present day Canada. The colony of New France was established in 1534 and was ceded to the United Kingdom in 1763 after the French defeat in the Seven Years' War. The now British Province of Quebec was divided into Upper and Lower Canada in 1791 and reunified in 1841. In 1867, the Province of Canada was joined with two other British colonies of New Brunswick and Nova Scotia through Confederation, forming a self-governing entity named Canada. The new dominion expanded by incorporating other parts of British North America, finishing with Newfoundland and Labrador in 1949.*

*Although responsible government had existed in Canada since 1848, Britain continued to set its foreign and defense policies after the end of the First World War. With the passing of the Statute of Westminster in 1931, Canada became co-equal with the United Kingdom. After the Constitution was repatriated in 1982, the final vestiges of legal dependence on the British parliament were removed. Canada currently consists of ten provinces and three territories and is a parliamentary democracy and a constitutional monarchy with Queen Elizabeth II as its head of state.*

Over centuries, elements of Aboriginal, French, British and more recent immigrant customs have combined to form a Canadian culture that has also been strongly influenced by its linguistic, geographic and economic neighbour,

the United States. Since the conclusion of the Second World War, Canadians have supported multilateralism abroad and socioeconomic development domestically.

Canada is the largest self-governing country in the Commonwealth of Nations. With a population of about 30 million people it is the most densely populated. Canada is divided into ten self-governing provinces and two territories which are administered by the federal government.

Since 1931 Canada was dependent on the British Parliament for legislation only. In 1949 the Canadian Parliament was given power to amend the constitution on matters within federal jurisdiction. The federal Parliament has exclusive legislative authority in all matters relating to the regulation of trade and commerce, defence, navigation and shipping, banking and currency, taxing. The provinces have exclusive control over all matters relating to education, municipal government property and civil rights within the province, licences etc.

The beauty and wonder of Canada is the Niagara Falls. And above all Canada is a forest country. The forests are the source of a third of all Canadian exports, pulp and paper being about 70 per cent of it. Canada also exports wheat which is grown in the west. The capital of Canada is Ottawa. Many interesting historical and cultural buildings are found in Ottawa such as the Museum of Natural History, Museum of Man, National Gallery and the National Arts Centre. But the most important buildings are the Parliament Buildings.

Ottawa has been called the Tulip City because every spring the city comes alive with thousands of tulips from the Netherlands. Queen Juliana started sending 15 000 tulips a year to Ottawa in 1946 as a way of thanking the Canadian people for the time spent in Canada with her daughters during World War II.

## ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

administer ( <i>v</i> )	boshqarmoq	управлять
amend ( <i>v</i> )	o‘zgartirish, o‘zgartirish kiritish	изменить, вносить поправки
authority ( <i>n</i> )	hokimiyat, vakolat	власть, полномочие
cede ( <i>v</i> )	topshirmoq, bermoq, past kelmoq	уступать
defence ( <i>n</i> )	himoya, mudofaa	защита, оборона
domestically ( <i>adv</i> )	ichki bozorda	на внутреннем рынке
dominion ( <i>n</i> )	hukmronlik, hoqonlik	владычество
fade ( <i>v</i> )	so‘limoq, qurimoq, yo‘qolmoq	увядать
fall ( <i>n</i> )	sharshara	водопад
licence ( <i>n</i> )	litsenziya	лицензия
millennia ( <i>n</i> )	mingyillik	тысячелетия
multilateralism ( <i>n</i> )	kopyoqli, serqirra, har taraglana	многосторонность
network ( <i>n</i> )	tarmoq	сеть
repatriate ( <i>v</i> )	repatriatsiya qilmoq, vataniga qaytarmoq	репатриировать, возвращаться на родину
tulip ( <i>n</i> )	lola	тюльпан
vestige ( <i>n</i> )	rudiment, qoldiq, sarqit, iz	рудимент, остаток, след

# Australia



*The European exploration of Australia was the exploration of Australia by Europeans or white explorers, encompassing several waves of seafarers and land explorers.*

*While Australia's territory (originally known as New Holland) never became an actual Dutch settlement or colony, Dutch navigators were the first to undisputedly explore and map Australian coastline. In the 17th century, the Dutch East India Company's navigators and explorers charted almost three-quarters of Australia's coastline, except its east coast. The Dutch ship, Duyfken, led by Willem Janszoon, made the first documented European landing in Australia in 1606.*

*After the Golden Age of Dutch exploration and discovery, the most famous expedition was that of Royal Navy Lieutenant (later Captain) James Cook who after an assignment to make observations of the 1769 Venus Transit, followed Admiralty instructions to explore the south Pacific for the reported Terra Australis and on 19 April 1770 sighted the south-eastern coast of Australia and became the first recorded European to explore the eastern coastline. Explorers by land and sea continued to survey the continent for some years after settlement.*

Did you know, for example, that Australia is the biggest island in the world? It is only a little smaller than the United States of America and it is bigger than Western Europe.

Did you know Australia is one of the oldest lands in the world? During millions of years, wind and water have slowly taken the earth from the hills and filled the valleys with it.

Although there are some mountains along the east coast and some along the west coast, the centre of the country is very flat. A long line of mountains runs from the north to the south of the east coast. It is called the Great Dividing Range, because it divides the green, wet coast of eastern Australia from the hot, dry lands in the centre.

Australia has three different climates. North of the Tropic of Capricorn the weather is tropical - hot and wet. In the centre the climate is very dry and the land is mainly desert. In the south it is pleasant, with cool winters and warm summers. The four great deserts of central Australia cover 2 000 000 square kilometers.

There are six different states in Australia: Western Australia, Queensland, New South Wales, Victoria, Tasmania and South Australia. There are also two territories: Northern Territory and Australian Capital Territory with Canberra, the nation's capital city in it. Each state has its own government and its own capital city. The state capitals are Perth, Brisbane, Sydney, Melbourne, Hobart and Adelaide.

Where do Australians live? In fact, most of them (85 per cent) live in the cities of the east coast. But even these cities are not very big. There are only 20 million people in Australia and it's a very big country.

Australia is sometimes called "the lucky country". One reason is the wonderful riches under the earth: gold, silver, iron, coal and many precious metals. Oil and natural gas have helped to build big industries.

Sydney is the best known place in New South Wales and the oldest city. Only after 200 years after Captain Cook had stopped near the Botany Bay the city grew from nothing into a home for millions of people. Despite the history, Sydney is the most modern place in Australia. Its buildings are the highest, its fashions are the newest and its colours are the brightest. A lot of Australia's exciting cultural life is found in Sydney. Artists, writers, opera singers and film makers all live here. So some people call the city "the Paris of the Pacific". But that isn't quite the same. Paris hasn't got all that sea, sand, sun and surf. A lot of people come here to relax and take a rest. Some of them really relax. Others are too busy - jogging, swimming, riding the great waves on their surfboards.

But Australia has more. There are, for example, the Blue Mountains. They are covered with forests of blue-coloured eucalyptus trees. The air above the forest contains millions of microscopic drops of eucalyptus oil. When the sun shines the air of the Blue Mountains is a real beautiful blue. The Great Barrier Reef on the coast of Queensland is a garden under the sea. There are 1 400 different kinds of fish and more than 300 kinds of coral. Tropical fruit and flowers grow on the beautiful islands.

South Australia is the driest of all the states, but it has the Murray River. The river brings greenness and life to the state's south-east corner. In the early days of Australian history the Murray River was South Australia's main road. Before real roads and railways came, the river carried people and goods from the coast up into the country. Some towns on the Murray still keep the old river boats, and visitors can ride on them.

There are two kinds of gold in Western Australia. First, there's the real gold that comes out of the ground. Gold was found in Kalgoorlie in 1893. Kalgoorlie still exports some gold, but the new gold of Western Australia is wheat. Big farms grow millions of tons of wheat every year, and wheat has become Australia's second biggest export.

Tasmania, the island south of Australia, is small. It is the same size as England. It is also very different from the other states. There are no deserts in Tasmania. It often rains, both in winter and in summer. Only half a million people live in Tasmania. The large part of the island is still covered with wild, beautiful rain forests. These forests are full of wonderful flowers and interesting animals, like the little Tasmanian devil.

### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT:

along ( <i>adv, prep</i> )	bo'yiga, bo'ylab, yoqalab	вдоль
charter ( <i>n</i> )	yorliq, huquq, imtiyoz	чартер
coastline ( <i>n</i> )	qirg'oq chizig'i	береговая линия
coral ( <i>adj, n</i> )	marjondan qilingan, marjon	коралловый, коралл
desert ( <i>n</i> )	cho'l, dasht, sahro	пустыня
encompass ( <i>v</i> )	o'rab olmoq, qamrab olmoq	охватывать
eucalyptus trees ( <i>n</i> )	evkalipt daraxtlari	эвкалиптовые деревья
exploration ( <i>n</i> )	tadqiqot	исследование
forests ( <i>n</i> )	o'rmonlar	леса

ground ( <i>n</i> )	yer	земля
jogging ( <i>n</i> )	hakkalab yurmoq	бег трусцой
riding ( <i>n</i> )	yurish	езда
seafarer ( <i>n</i> )	dengizchi	матрос
surfboard ( <i>n</i> )	serfing taxtasi	доска для серфинга
Tasmanian devil	Tasmaniya iblisi	тасманский дьявол
tropical ( <i>adj</i> )	tropik	тропический
wave ( <i>n</i> )	to‘lqin	волна
wild ( <i>adj</i> )	yovvoyi	дикий

## New Zealand

### *The Greatest Sailors in the Pacific (The White Long Cloud)*



*More than a century before Christopher Columbus crossed the Atlantic to discover America, the Maoris sailed from their home in the Society Islands in Asia over thousands of kilometres of ocean to settle in Aotearoa - the Land of the Long White Cloud. The Maoris, a Polynesian people, are aborigines of New Zealand. After long stays in Indonesia and the South Pacific, which they explored for many years, they made their great journey to New Zealand about the middle of the 14th century. They sailed in double canoes open to all weathers. They knew the winds, the ocean currents and the stars, and this earned them the name of Vikings of the Sunrise.*

*In many countries, New Zealanders, too, are known as Kiwis. The kiwi is rather an unusual bird found only in New Zealand. It has no tail, almost no wings, and its nostrils are near the end of its bill. No other bird lays an egg so large in proportion to its size. Its egg is about one-fifth of its own weight. This is a tremendous size! The bird is the symbol of the people of New Zealand.*

What is the name of the country which has volcanoes and rivers of ice, deer and sea-elephants? It is New Zealand, called the Land of the Long White Cloud by the Maoris.

As you know, New Zealand is an island country. Most of its people live in the North Island, and that is where one can find the big volcanoes like Egmont and Tongariro, and the boiling pools and geysers and lakes of bubbling mud.

South Island is larger than North Island and has the highest mountains. There you can find the snow-capped Southern Alps, rising 3 764 metres to the tip of Mount Cook. South Island is also very beautiful with its lakes, glaciers and fiords.

North Island is where you find the Maoris, the fine people who lived in these islands hundreds of years before the white men came. Most of them live near Auckland (the former capital), which along with Christchurch and Wellington, is the biggest city.



There is a lot of rich tourists here, because New Zealand is famous for its fishing, snow sports, mountaineering, sailing and hiking. The climate is pleasant at all seasons, without much difference between winter and summer. New Zealand does not have the terrible heat of Australian summers; the oceans temper her climate and the mountains bring down quite a lot of rain. Forests of exotic pines near the centre of North Island cover an area of more than 160 000 hectares. This is the largest single continuous area of planted forest in the world. All in all New Zealand has more than four hundred thousand hectares of planted forests. The most important wood is pine, which grows five times faster in New Zealand than in its native habitat in California, USA.

What do people do in New Zealand? Farm, mostly. Dairy produce, meat and wool are the main exports. New Zealand ranks second only to Australia as an exporter of wool. There are many factories there too, with hydro-electric stations to produce the power for them.

The capital of New Zealand since 1865 and one of its busiest ports, Wellington is situated among hills on the western side of a natural harbour. It is the third largest city in New Zealand.

The Maori name for Wellington Harbour means *the great bay of Tara*. According to Maori legend, Tara was the first Polynesian settler in this place. But Nickolson (after a Royal Navy captain) was the name given to it by the first British settlers, and it is still sometimes called by this name.

In 1839 a British officer bought the site of Wellington from the Maoris; he got it in exchange for blankets and some other unimportant things. In 1840 the first settlers arrived and called their settlement Britannia. By 1842 there were 3 700 colonists in the settlement and Britannia had become Wellington.

#### ACTIVE VOCABULARY OF THE TEXT

fiord ( <i>n</i> )	fiord	фьорд
geyser ( <i>n</i> )	geyzer, issiq buloq	гейзер
habitat ( <i>n</i> )	yashash joyi, makon	место обитания
hiking ( <i>n</i> )	yayov sayohat qilish	пеший туризм, пешеходная экскурсия
journey ( <i>n</i> )	safar, sayohat qilmoq	поездка, путешествие
mountaineering ( <i>n</i> )	alpinizm	альпинизм
pine ( <i>n</i> )	qarag'ay	сосна
pool ( <i>n</i> )	buloq	зд. родник
sailing ( <i>n</i> )	parusli sport	парусный спорт
snow-capped ( <i>adj</i> )	qor bilan qoplangan	покрытый снегом
temper ( <i>n, v</i> )	fe'l-atvor,	характер, темперировать
tremendous ( <i>adj</i> )	ulkan, buyuk, bahaybat	огромный

## ***TASKS FOR DEVELOPING SELF-LEARNING***

### ***SKILLS:***

- 1.** Choose one of the three topics above.
- 2.** Make up 10 questions related to the text.
- 3.** Write out new words from the text and give definitions to them.
- 4.** Make up your own sentences with the new words.
- 5.** Make a plan and retell the text.
- 6.** Find out more information about other directions e.g. people, traditions, or science and education and make a brief presentation.
- 7.** While preparing your presentation, add some interesting story or legend, or some interesting fact about it.
- 8.** Introduce your presentation to an audience (group mates, colleagues, and etc.) and ask them if they liked it and if it is understandable and interesting.
- 9.** At the end of your talk ask the audience if they would like to visit this country and why?
- 10.** Listen to everyone's opinion and summarize them, then write a one-paragraph conclusion combining your prepared work and your audience's feedback and comments.

**INDEX GLOSSARY FOR BASIC CONCEPTS RELATED WITH  
MODERN PEDAGOGICAL TECHNOLOGIES, METHODS AND  
FORMS OF COMMUNICATIONS**

**NUTQ KOMMUNIKATSIYASINING ZAMONAVIY PEDAGOGIK  
TEXNOLOGIYALARI, METODLARI VA SHAKLLARI BILAN  
BOG`LIQ ASOSIY TUSHUNCHALARI GLOSSARIYSI**

**ИНДЕКС-ГЛОССАРИЙ ОСНОВНЫХ ПОНЯТИЙ, СВЯЗАННЫХ  
С СОВРЕМЕННЫМИ ПЕДАГОГИЧЕСКИМИ ТЕХНОЛОГИЯМИ,  
МЕТОДАМИ И ФОРМАМИ КОММУНИКАЦИИ**

<p><b>Abstract</b> - a brief description of the book, the article in the form of a list of the most important issues: <i>abstract of the article, monographs.</i></p>	<p><b>Annotatsiya</b> – kitob, maqolaning qisqacha tavsifi, eng muhim masalalar ro‘yxati: <i>maqolaning sarlavhasi, monografiya, annoyaysiya</i></p>	<p><b>Аннотация</b> – краткая характеристика книги, статьи в виде перечня главнейших вопросов: <i>аннотация статьи, монографии.</i></p>
<p><b>Affirmation</b> - thought, position, statement, proving, asserting smth.</p>	<p><b>Tasdiq</b> - fikr, pozitsiya, bayonot, isbot, tasdiqlash.</p>	<p><b>Утверждение</b> – мысль, положение, высказывание, доказывающие, утверждающие что-л.</p>
<p><b>Comment</b>-interpretation, explanation of the text: <i>comment on the article; give comments to the text.</i></p>	<p><b>Izoh</b> - izoh, matnni izohlash: <i>maqolaga sharh; matnga izoh berish.</i></p>	<p><b>Комментарий</b> – толкование, объяснение к тексту: <i>комментарий к статье; дать комментарии к тексту.</i></p>
<p><b>Communication</b> - verbal communication, transfer of thoughts and feelings through language: <i>speech as a means of communication.</i></p>	<p><b>Muloqot</b> - og‘zaki muloqot, fikrlar va hissiyotlarni til orqali yetkazish: <i>Nutq aloqa vositasi sifatida.</i></p>	<p><b>Коммуникация</b> – словесное общение, передача мыслей и чувств с помощью языка: <i>речь как средство коммуникации.</i></p>
<p><b>Conceptual table.</b> This is a different way to organize the material before writing, this is a conceptual table. This method will be especially helpful if you have to compare three or more aspects or questions. The table is structured as follows: vertical objects are compared, and horizontally - properties and properties that make this comparison.</p>	<p><b>Konseptual jadval</b> - Yozishdan oldin materialni tashkil etishning yana bir yo‘li bor, bu kontseptual jadval. Uch yoki undan ortiq aspektni yoki savolni solishtirish kerak bo‘lsa, bu usul ayniqsa foydali bo‘ladi. Jadval quyidagicha tuzilgan: vertikal obyektlar qiyoslanadi, gorizontal holatda xususiyatlari taqqooslanadi.</p>	<p><b>Концептуальная таблица.</b> Еще один способ организовать материал перед написанием, это концептуальная таблица. Этот метод будет особенно полезен, если вам нужно сравнить три или более аспектов или вопросов. Таблица структурируется следующим образом: сравниваются вертикальные объекты, а горизонтально - свойства, которые делают это сравнение.</p>

<p><b>Concepts based text construction.</b> The method of “understanding on the basis of concepts” is included in independent work on the type of request that requires a variety of logical actions: analysis and generalization, identifying facts and facts, identifying commonality and differentiation, separating primary and secondary features, revealing relationships, and so on. Usually, students face uncertain events, new material, a problem situation that requires new knowledge and the search for ways to solve the problem of learning.</p>	<p><b>Tushunchalarga asoslangan matn tuzish.</b> "konseptsiyalar asosida tushunish" usuli mustaqil ishlarga turli xil mantiqiy harakatlar talab qilinadigan so'rov turi bo'yicha kiritiladi: tahlil va umumlashma, faktlar va dalillarni aniqlash, umumiylik va farqlashni aniqlab olish, birinchi va ikkinchi darajali xususiyatlarni ajratish, aloqalarni aniqlash va hk. Odatda ta'lim oluvchilar noaniq hodisalar, yangi materiallar va ta'lim muammolarini hal qilish yo'llarini talab qiluvchi muammoli vaziyatlarga duch keladilar.</p>	<p><b>Составление текста, основанное на концепциях.</b> Метод «понимания на основе понятий» входит в самостоятельную работу по типу запроса, который требует разнообразных логических действий: анализа и обобщения, выявления фактов и фактов, выявления общности и дифференциации, разделения первичных и вторичных признаков, - раскрытие отношений и прочее. Обычно студенты сталкиваются с неопределенными событиями, новым материалом, проблемной ситуацией, которая требует новых знаний и поиска путей решения проблемы обучения.</p>
<p><b>Conversation</b> - conversation, exchange of information, opinions: <i>friendly conversation, conversation with friends, conversation at the "round table".</i></p>	<p><b>Suhbat</b> - suhbat, axborot almashish, fikr-mulohazalar: do'stona suhbatlar, do'stlar bilan suhbat: "<i>davra suhbatlari</i>", do'stlar bilan suhbat.</p>	<p><b>Беседа</b> – разговор, обмен сведениями, мнениями: <i>дружеская беседа, беседа с друзьями, беседа за «круглым столом».</i></p>
<p><b>Description</b>- to give description to something, some situation or phenomenon</p>	<p><b>Ta'rif</b> – biror narsa, voqea, hodisaga ta'rif berish</p>	<p><b>Описание</b> – сочинение, изложение, в котором описывается что-л.</p>
<p><b>Judgment</b> is an opinion about smth., a look at smth.: <i>a judgment about art, to express one's judgment.</i></p>	<p><b>Murosa</b> - bu shunchaki qarashdir: <i>san'atga nisbatan qarash, o'z fikrini ifodalash.</i></p>	<p><b>Суждение</b> – мнение о чём-л., взгляд на что-л.: <i>суждение об искусстве, высказать своё суждение.</i></p>
<p><b>Description</b> - an essay describing smth.: <i>description of the picture.</i></p>	<p><b>Ta'rif</b> - rasmni tavsiflovchi insho: <i>rasmning tavsifi.</i></p>	<p><b>Описание</b> – сочинение, изложение, в котором описывается что-л.: <i>описание картины.</i></p>
<p><b>Dialog</b> is the conversation between two or several people.</p>	<p><b>Dialog</b> - ikki yoki bir necha kishi o'rtasidagi suhbat.</p>	<p><b>Диалог</b> – разговор между двумя или более людьми.</p>
<p><b>Dispute</b> - a public debate on scientific topics: <i>a dispute over a read book.</i></p>	<p><b>Munozara</b> - ilmiy mavzular bo'yicha jamoatchilik munozarasi: <i>o'qilgan kitob yuzasidan bahs.</i></p>	<p><b>Диспут</b> – публичный спор на научные темы: <i>диспут по прочитанной книге</i></p>

<p><b>Discussion</b> - expressing thoughts about smth.: discussion of the project, plan, report.</p>	<p><b>Muhokama</b> – biror mavzu bo‘yicha o‘z fikrini bayon etish: <i>filoyihaning muhokamasi, rejasi, hisoboti haqida fikrlarni ifodalash.</i></p>	<p><b>Обсуждение</b> – высказывание соображений по поводу чего-л.: <i>обсуждение проекта, плана, доклада.</i></p>
<p><b>Essay</b> - 1) literary, scientific work: <i>exemplary essay, collected works</i>; 2) writing, exercises in the correct presentation of thoughts, arguments on a given topic: <i>write an essay, an essay on the topic of art.</i></p>	<p><b>Esse</b> - 1) adabiy, ilmiy ish: namunaviy esse, esselar to‘plami; 2) yozish, fikrlar taqdim etishning to‘g‘riligi, mashg‘ulot mavzusida fikrlash: <i>mashq yozish, san‘at mavzusiga insho yozish.</i></p>	<p><b>Сочинение</b> – 1) литературное, научное произведение: <i>образцовое сочинение, собрание сочинений</i>; 2) письменная работа, упражнения в правильности изложения мыслей, рассуждений на заданную тему: <i>писать сочинение, сочинение на тему об искусстве</i></p>
<p><b>Free writing.</b> Students can invite them to write all the things they think about a particular episode of the topic, for example, "Ulugbek's Tragedy" in five minutes. After five minutes, you can invite them to read their articles. At this stage, the teacher has many options. For example, couples may be invited to share their views with the whole group and create a group-minded attack.</p>	<p><b>Erkin yozish</b> - Talabga ularni mavzuning muayyan qismini, masalan, "Ulug'bek fojeasi haqida" o‘z fikrlarini 5 daqiqada yozish taklif qilinadi. Besh daqiqa o‘tganida ularni yozgan fikrlarini o‘qish uchun taklif qilishingiz mumkin. Ushbu bosqichda o‘qituvchi ko‘p variantlarga ega. Misol uchun, juftliklarga o‘zlarining nuqtayi nazarlarini butun guruh bilan baham ko‘rishga taklif berilishi va guruhlarda fikrlar qarshi hujumini uyushtirishlari mumkin.</p>	<p><b>Свободное изложение.</b> Обучающие за пять минут дают краткое описание фрагмент какой-либо тематики, например, «Трагедия Улугбека». По истечении пяти минут вы можете пригласить их прочитать свои статьи. На этом этапе у преподавателя есть много вариантов. Например, парам может быть предложено поделиться своими взглядами со всей группой и создать групповую атаку.</p>
<p><b>"Five minute essay".</b> This type of assignment allows students to reflect on their own independent views on the subject and to focus on the aspects in which the teacher will pay more attention to the student learning material. Specifically, students will be asked to do one of the following two tasks: they will be able to independently comment on what they have learned and to ask one question that they have not yet received from the essay.</p>	<p><b>"Besh daqiqali esse".</b> Ushbu turdagi topshiriqlar ta’lim oluvchilar o‘zlarining mustaqil fikrlashlari haqida fikr yuritishga va o‘qituvchi talabalarning o‘quv materiallariga yanada ko‘proq e’tibor beradigan jihatlarga e’tibor qaratishlariga imkon beradi. Xususan, ta’lim oluvchilarga quyidagi ikkita vazifani amalga oshirish taklif qilinadi: ular o‘zlari o‘rgangan narsalari haqida mustaqil ravishda izoh berishlari va eeseda yoritilmagan narsaa</p>	<p><b>"Пятиминутный очерк".</b> Этот тип задания позволяет учащимся обдумать свои собственные независимые взгляды на предмет и сосредоточиться на тех аспектах, в которых преподаватель будет уделять больше внимания учебному материалу учащегося. В частности, выполнить одно из следующих двух заданий: они смогут самостоятельно прокомментировать то, что они узнали, и задать один вопрос, ответ который они еще не получили в</p>

	bo'yichasavol berishlari mumkin.	письменном очерке.
<b>Moral</b> - 1) moral norms of behavior, relationships with people, as well as morality itself; 2) logical, instructive conclusion from something; 3) moral instruction, instruction.	<b>Ma'naviy axloq</b> - 1) xulq-atvorning axloqiy me'yorlari, odamlar bilan munosabat, shuningdek axloqning o'zi; 2) biror narsadan mantiqiy, ibratli xulosa; 3) axloqiy ko'rsatmalar.	<b>Мораль</b> –1) нравственные нормы поведения, отношений с людьми, а также сама нравственность; 2) логический, поучительный вывод из чего-нибудь; 3) нравоучение, наставление.
<b>Pedagogical technology</b> is a project of a certain educational process developed with consideration of the relevant principles, effectively implemented in practice.	<b>Pedagogik texnologiya</b> amaldagi prinsiplarni hisobga olgan holda ishlab chiqilgan muayyan o'quv jarayonining loyihasi hamda ularning jarayondagi samarali foydalanish jarayoni. .	<b>Педагогическая технология</b> – это проект определенного учебного процесса разработанных с учетом соответствующих принципов, эффективно реализуемых на практике.
<b>Speaking</b> is "the process of building and sharing meaning through the use of verbal and non-verbal symbols, in a variety of contexts" Speaking is a crucial part of second language learning and teaching (Chaney, 1998, p. 13.)	<b>Gapirish</b> "turli xil sharoitda og'zaki va og'zaki bo'lmagan ramzlarni qo'llash orqali ma'nolarni yaratish va almashish jarayonidir". Nutq - bu ikkinchi tilni o'rganish va o'qitishning muhim qismidir(Chaney, 1998, 13-bet).	<b>Разговор</b> - это «процесс создания и обмена значением посредством использования вербальных и невербальных символов в различных контекстах». Разговор является важной частью изучения и преподавания второго языка (Чаний, 1998, p. 13).
<b>Situation</b> - conditions (circumstances, purpose, etc.) In which the statement is made, verbal communication: the situation of communication.	<b>Vaziyat</b> - bayonot beriladigan sharoitlar (vaziyatlar, maqsadlar va boshqalar), og'zaki muloqot: aloqa holati.	<b>Ситуация</b> – условия (обстоятельства, цель и т.п.), в которых осуществляется высказывание, речевое общение.
<b>Summary</b> - a general conclusion drawn from the study of particular phenomena.	<b>Umumlashtirish/xulosalash</b> - muayyan hodisalarni o'rganishdan olingan umumiy xulosa.	<b>Обобщение</b> – общий вывод, сделанный в результате изучения частных явлений
<b>The method of "Sequence of Rational Logical Chains"</b> . For example, suppose that a workshop on "teaching methods" is being held. At first, the teacher writes the educational techniques in a confused way. Then, students are asked to classify these techniques into groups, verbally,	<b>"Chalqashtirilgan mantiqiy zanjirlar ketma-ketligi"</b> usuli. Misol uchun, "ta'lim berish usullari" seminari o'tkaziladi deb taxmin qiling. Birinchidan, o'qituvchi ta'lim usullarini chalkashlikda olib boradi. So'ngra, talabalar ushbu usullarni og'zaki, visual va amaliy guruhlariga ajratilishi so'raladi.	<b>Метод «Последовательности рациональных логических цепочек»</b> . Например, предположим, что проводится семинар «методы обучения». Сначала учитель запутывает методы обучения в замешательстве. Затем студентов просят классифицировать эти

visually, and practically.		техники по группам, в устной, визуальной и практической форме.
<b>Report</b> - a public announcement, which is a detailed presentation on a specific topic.	<b>Ma'ruza</b> – ma'lum bir mavzuni batafsil bayon qiluvchi ommabop axborot.	<b>Доклад</b> – публичное сообщение, представляющее собой развернутое изложение на определённую тему.
<b>Retelling</b> - a written or oral statement in your own words of smth. (read, heard)	<b>Bayon qilish</b> - o'z so'zlari bilan yozma yoki og'zaki shaklda tushuntirish.	<b>Пересказ</b> – письменное или устное изложение своими словами чего-л. (прочитанного, услышанного)
<b>Statement</b> is a retelling of smth. (usually written) in your own words: <i>a statement of the read, a statement on a given topic.</i>	<b>Bayon</b> – odatda, yozma ravishda o'z so'zi bilan bayon qilish: <i>o'qilgan ma'lumot bo'yicha bayon, berilgan mavzu bo'yicha bayon.</i>	<b>Изложение</b> – пересказ чего-л. (обычно письменный) своими словами: <i>изложение по прочитанному материалу, изложение по данной теме.</i>
<b>T-table.</b> It is a universal graphic organizer for writing binary answers (yes / no, fidelity / countermeasure) or contradictory answers during the discussion.	<b>T-chizma.</b> Tizimga kirish uchun ishlatiladigan qurilmalar (ha / yo'q, tarafdorlar / qarshilar) yoki boshqa javoblar bilan tanishib chiqishingiz mumkin.	<b>Т-таблица.</b> - это универсальный графический органайзер для записи бинарных ответов (да / нет, верности / контрмеры) или противоречивых ответов во время обсуждения.
<b>Text</b> is a textual context consisting of one or several syntactic units that give imagination (information) of a concrete reality.	<b>Matn</b> - ma'lum voqelik haqida tasavvur (ma'lumot) beradigan bir yoki bir necha sintaktik birliklardan tashkil topgan nutqiy butunlik matn hisoblanadi	<b>Текст</b> - это текстовый контекст, состоящий из одной или нескольких синтаксических единиц, которые дают воображение (информацию) конкретной реальности
<b>Two-part diary.</b> Two-part diaries allow students to closely link textual content with their own experience, satisfying their natural curiosity (usually for large amount of text given as a homework). On the left side of the paper marks the part of the text that most impresses on them. On the right, they should give comments.	<b>Ikki qismli kundaliklar</b> - Ikki qismli kundaliklar ta'lim oluvchilarga matn mazmunini o'z shaxsiy tajribasi bilan chambarchas bog'lash, o'zining tabiiy qiziquvchanligini qondirish imkonini beradi (odatda katta hajmdagi ma'lumot uchun uyga bazifa qilib beriladi). Qog'ozning chap tomoniga matnning qaysi qismi ularga eng ko'p taassurot qoldirganini qayd etishadi. O'ng tomonida ular sharh berishlari kerak	<b>Дневники из двух частей.</b> Дневники, состоящие из двух частей, позволяют студентам тесно связывать текстовое содержание с собственным опытом, удовлетворяя их естественное любопытство (обычно тексты большого объёма задаются как домашнее задание). На левой стороне бумаги отмечена та часть текста, которая больше всего на них впечатляет. На правой стороне они дают комментарии

## ***Reference:***

1. O‘zbekiston Respublikasi Prezidentining Qarori 13.09.2017-yildagi PQ-3271-son, «Xalq so‘zi», 2017 y., 184 (6878)-son; O‘R QHT, 2017-y., 38-son, 1029-modda.
2. I.A.Karimov. Barkamol avlod orzusi. T. 1999.
3. Sh.M. Mirziyoyev. Erkin va farovon demokratik O‘zbekiston davlatini birgalikda barpo etamiz. – Toshkent: O‘zbekiston, 2016.
4. Национальная программа по подготовке кадров Республики Узбекистан. Т: «Узбекистон», 1997.
5. Alisher Navoiy. Mukammal asarlar to‘plami (20 jildlik), 7-12-jildlar, Toshkent, 1991-1996.
6. I.A. Eshmamatov. Zamonaviy axborot texnologiyalari muhitida pedagoglarning axborot-kommunikativ kompetentligini rivojlantirishning nazariy pedagogik asoslarini shakllantirish. Pedagogika fanlari bo‘yicha falsafa doktori (PhD) dissertatsiyasi avtoreferati. Toshkent, 2018.
7. M.H.Ergasheva. “Avesto”dagi falsafiy g‘oyalarga sinergetik yondashuv (ontologik va gnoseologik tahlil). Falsafa fanlari bo‘yicha falsafa doktori (PhD) dissertatsiyasi avtoreferati. Samarqand, 2017.
8. A.Ulko, E.Volkova and others. Professional development of Uzbekistan English language teachers. Training toolkit. –T: British Council. 2009.
9. Dee Broughton, M.Kasatkina and others. B2 Ready. T: Uzbekistan: CEID Georgetown University CIED. 2016.
10. Pauline Cullen. Vocabulary for IELTS. –Cambridge: Cambridge university press. 2013. -174 p.
11. Stuard Redman. English vocabulary in use. –Cambridge: Cambridge university press. 2004. -271 p.
12. Vince, M. Elementary Language Practice. English Grammar and Vocabulary / M. Vince. – Oxford: Macmillan Ed., 2003. – 288 c.

13. G.V. Rogova, F.M. Rozhkova. English in two years. Moscow: Prosvesheniye. 1993.
14. И.Н. Багинская, Н.В. Потягалова. Пособие по формированию страноведческой компетенции. – И: Иван. гос. хим.-технол. универ., 1998.
15. О.Н. Морозова, О.А. Гливенкова и др. Английский язык для студентов технических вузов. – Тамбов: Изд-во ФГБОУ ВПО «ТГТУ», 2013.
16. <http://www.upjs.sk/public/media/3499/English-for-Chemists.pdf>
17. <http://www.enchantedlearning.com/graphicorganizers/cloud>
18. [www.study.do](http://www.study.do)
19. [www.lex.uz](http://www.lex.uz)